



# Cengage Learning Holdings II, Inc.

Annual Report for Fiscal Year  
Ended March 31, 2021

---



**Brandy B.**  
Higher Education



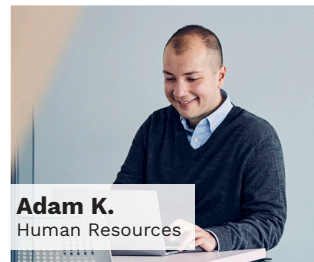
**Jason C.**  
Global Technology



**Nhaim K.**  
Higher Education



**Cengage Executive Team**



**Adam K.**  
Human Resources



**Sandra B.**  
Milady



**Dana T.**  
Communications

As of the end of the period covered by this report, Cengage Learning Holdings II, Inc. and its consolidated subsidiaries (the “Company”) were not subject to the reporting requirements of Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended. However, the Company does have an obligation to comply with the terms of its Shareholder Agreement, dated as of March 31, 2014 (the “Shareholder Agreement”). The Shareholder Agreement includes references to certain provisions of the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission’s reporting requirements with modifications as agreed by all parties. The Company has complied with its obligations under the Shareholder Agreement and this report is made available pursuant to such obligations.

## SPECIAL NOTE REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

This report contains both historical and forward-looking statements. All statements other than statements of historical fact are, or may be deemed to be, forward-looking statements within the meaning of Section 27A of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, and Section 21E of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended. You can identify forward-looking statements because they contain words such as “believe,” “expect,” “may,” “will,” “should,” “could,” “seek,” “intend,” “plan,” “estimate,” “project,” “foresee,” “likely,” or “anticipate” or similar expressions that concern our strategies, objectives, plans, or goals. In addition, all statements regarding the anticipated effects of COVID-19 and the responses thereto, including the pandemic’s impact on general economic and market conditions, as well as on our business, customers, end markets, results of operation and financial condition and anticipated actions to be taken by management in response to COVID-19 and related governmental and business actions, as well as other statements that are not strictly historic in nature are forward looking. Although the forward-looking statements contained in this report reflect management’s current beliefs based upon information currently available to management and upon assumptions which management believes to be reasonable, actual results may differ materially from those stated in or implied by these forward-looking statements.

A number of factors could cause actual results or performance to differ materially from the results expressed or implied in the forward-looking statements, including those listed in the “Risk Factors” section of this report. These factors should be considered carefully and readers should not place undue reliance on the forward-looking statements. These risks and uncertainties include, without limitation:

- the impact of public health epidemics, such as the COVID-19 pandemic, on employees, customers, vendors, partners and the global economy;
- the impact of competition from significant established competitors and nontraditional competitors including various technology providers and online distributors, including the impact of new and enhanced product and service offerings and technology and competitors’ acquiring additional businesses in key sectors in order to broaden their offerings;
- the impact of business combinations in the industry in which we compete;
- our ability to introduce new products, services or technologies;
- the impact of used textbook and/or rental textbook programs and our ability to compete with them;
- the effect of increased accessibility of free or relatively inexpensive information and materials on pricing and demand for our products and services;
- increased availability of lower priced international versions of our products in the domestic market or higher prices for our products overseas may cause our sales to decline;
- changes in third-party printing fees and unanticipated increases in other operating costs;
- our ability to attract and retain key authors, retain rights to our authors’ works, and avoid disputes with our authors;
- our ability to attract and retain content providers and employees;
- our dependence on third-party distributors, representatives and retailers;
- termination of at-will contracts to which we are a party could harm our business;
- our ability and willingness to maintain licensing agreements with third-party content providers;
- our reliance on third-party providers of outsourced services and any failure of such providers to provide services effectively on a timely basis;
- reductions in enrollments at colleges and universities;
- adverse changes in domestic and global economic and political conditions, including those related to the availability of credit, government and private loans for students and consequential decline in consumer demand for our products;
- the effect of changes in government programs and private lending practices relating to student aid and library funding;
- the impact of changes to laws and regulations applicable to us and our customers, including rules that could result in decreased programs offered by, and limit enrollments in, institutions of higher and continuing education including for-profit schools, the enactment of the Coronavirus Aid, Relief, and Economic Security Act (the “CARES Act”);
- our ability to win state adoptions, cancellation or postponement of adoptions, and changes in state funding;
- our ability to expand and conduct our operations outside the United States;

- the effect of fluctuations between foreign currencies and the United States dollar and our ability to effectively manage foreign currency exposure;
- the seasonality of our business;
- our ability to successfully implement our business strategy;
- our ability to identify, acquire and successfully integrate future acquisition targets;
- the impact of divestitures, which includes inability to find a potential buyer, disruption to our business, and difficulties in separating the operations of the divested business;
- our ability to find potential targets, buyers or investors, as applicable, on favorable terms, disruption to our business and/or diversion of management attention from other business concerns, difficulties in integrating an acquired business and the assumption of new liabilities relating to the acquired business or separating the operations of the divested business and retention of certain liabilities related to the divested business;
- failures or disruptions of our and our third-party providers' hosting facilities and electronic delivery systems for our products and services;
- the impact of technology developments and our ability to continue to make effective investments in our technology infrastructure;
- technology failures;
- potential security breaches or cyberattacks involving our technology infrastructure, our products and services, or our customers' credit and debit card and private data, which could subject us to material claims and additional costs and harm our reputation;
- our ability to adequately manage and develop our operational and managerial systems and processes including our enterprise resource planning software;
- our ability to comply with privacy laws;
- our ability to adequately protect, maintain and enforce our intellectual property rights and proprietary rights and the adequacy of protections of our intellectual property under applicable laws;
- liabilities resulting from, and costs of defending against, litigation including piracy and intellectual property infringement claims;
- our debt agreements, which limit our flexibility in operating our business including, among other things, our ability under certain circumstances to engage in mergers or consolidations, sell assets and use the proceeds of such sale, pay distributions to our equity owners and/or buy back debt;
- the impact of being controlled by Apax Partners, L.P., KKR Asset Management, and Searchlight Capital Partners (together, the "Principal Equityholders"), whose interests may conflict with other stockholders;
- incurrence of impairment charges for goodwill, long-lived assets and identifiable intangible assets;
- our ability to react to changes in the economy or our industry;
- changes in our credit ratings or macroeconomic conditions;
- uncertainty relating to the London Interbank Offered Rate ("LIBOR") calculation process and potential phasing out of LIBOR may adversely affect our results of operations; and
- our ability to maintain effective internal controls over financial reporting.

Although we have attempted to identify important risks and factors that could cause actual actions, events or results to differ materially from those described in or implied by our forward-looking statements, other factors and risks may cause actions, events or results to differ materially from those anticipated, estimated or intended. We cannot assure you that forward-looking statements will prove to be accurate, as actual actions, results and future events could differ materially from those anticipated or implied by such statements. All forward-looking statements included in this report are expressly qualified in their entirety by the foregoing cautionary statements and the risk factors described in the "Risk Factors" section of this report. These forward-looking statements are made as of the date of this report and, except as required by law, we undertake no obligation to update, amend, clarify or revise them to reflect new events or circumstances.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	Page No.
Description of Business	1
Risk Factors	14
Properties	26
Legal Proceedings	27
Market for the Issuer's Equity	27
Changes in and Disagreement with Accountants on Accounting and Financial Disclosure	27
Directors and Executive Officers	28
Principal Stockholders	32
Principal Accountant's Fees and Services	33
Selected Quarterly Financial Data	34
Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations	38
Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures About Market Risk	68
Consolidated Financial Statements	69

## DESCRIPTION OF BUSINESS

Cengage Learning Holdings II, Inc. (“CL Holdings II, Inc.”), together with its consolidated subsidiaries, is hereinafter collectively referred to as “Cengage,” the “Company,” “us,” “we” and “our.”

### Our Company

We are a leading global education technology company, built for the modern world and operating at scale, that delivers primarily digital products and services for millions of students, enabling attainment of high-quality education and critical skills needed in today’s highly competitive work force. Built on a strong foundation of over 100 years of trusted content, loyal customer relationships, and state of the art digital platforms, we are a leader in the education verticals we serve.

We serve the higher education, workforce skills, secondary education, English Language Teaching (“ELT”) and research markets worldwide. We create high quality and affordable learning experiences that build confidence and momentum toward the future students want. Our educational solutions deliver tailored authoritative information to increase student engagement, foster academic excellence and improve learning and professional development. Through our technology and reach, we help make education more accessible and affordable both in traditional settings, as well as in the rapidly growing online skills segment. In addition, operating under our Gale brand, we are a global provider of digital resources helping libraries reach learners of all ages. We are a trusted ally for educators and learners who rely on our unique approach of combining immersive technology and carefully curated content to make learning enjoyable and interactive, delivering the skills required for the 21st century workforce. At Cengage, we enrich the relationship between educators and students by advancing the way students learn.

For the fiscal year ended March 31, 2021, we had Adjusted Revenues of approximately \$1,222.7 million and Adjusted EBITDA less Pre-Publication Costs of approximately \$258.5 million. See “Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations” for our definition of Adjusted Revenues and Adjusted EBITDA less Pre-Publication Costs and a reconciliation of Adjusted Revenues to revenues and Adjusted EBITDA less Pre-Publication Costs to net loss.

**COVID-19.** The ongoing impact of COVID-19 on our future operational and financial performance will depend on many highly uncertain developments. These include but are not limited to the duration of the pandemic, the efficacy of vaccinations, vaccination rates, and impact on our customers, our sales cycle, our partners and employees. The impact of future developments remains uncertain and predominantly beyond our knowledge or control. As of March 31, 2021, excluding the goodwill impairment charge of \$9.7 million, primarily related to our North America ELT business, the COVID-19 impact on our results of operations was modest. The revenue impact of widespread temporary school and institution closures was partly mitigated by increased uptake of digital products and services to support customers’ needs for hybrid and remote learning solutions, and increased demand for retraining or reskilling in response to increased unemployment. In addition, Cengage implemented a cost and cash management program, which mitigated COVID-19’s potential negative impact on profitability and liquidity. See Risk Factors, “The impact of COVID-19 on our operations, and the operations of our customers, suppliers and print providers, may harm our business,” and Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations for additional information.

### Our Strategy

Cengage operates at significant scale in the estimated \$7 billion U.S. higher education course material market and the estimated \$8 billion of adjacent curriculum markets across international higher education, secondary education, and English language teaching segments. The global education industry encompasses a diverse set of products, systems, and services, including digital solutions, textbooks and supplementary educational materials, infrastructure and services directed at students, faculty, and educational institutions. The industry benefits from a large addressable customer base and positive growth fundamentals: it has expanded over the last decade, driven primarily by population growth, increasing economic development and greater recognition of the value of education as measured by increased earnings power associated with higher levels of education.

In addition, the education sector in which Cengage operates is being shaped by certain key macro level trends which represent significant future growth opportunities and are central to our strategy. First amongst these is the growth in adoption of digital learning solutions across all education settings. The penetration of online and digital learning tools has grown significantly over the last five years, particularly in U.S. higher education, where it has become the preferred model for course materials. Digital solutions make learning more accessible and affordable, whilst providing a better learning experience and outcomes for students and educators. Digital also conveys meaningful benefits to us as a provider of learning

solutions through increased sales reach and distribution, direct engagement with learners, alternative subscription based and other commercial models, and improved scale benefits and operational effectiveness. These inherent features of digital combine to drive recurring revenues and improve our overall business economics. The COVID-19 pandemic accelerated digital adoption across all segments as educators and students shifted to remote online or hybrid remote/physical settings to support continuity of learning through the pandemic. In our core U.S. Higher Education business, COVID-19 accelerated our digital growth from 17% (based on FY17-20 CAGR) to 23% in FY21 and multiple data points suggest that the digital acceleration is here to stay:

- Very satisfied digital customers: 8.2 average satisfaction (0-10 scale) among Cengage instructors using courseware in fiscal year 2021 Spring
- High customer intent to stay in digital: +87% of Cengage instructors state they will continue using courseware in fiscal year 2022 Fall
- Positive outlook for digital use from faculty and administrators: 57% of faculty more optimistic about learning materials from pre-pandemic; 43% of administrators expect more use of courseware post-pandemic

A second key trend is the evolution of traditional education pathways and growth of alternative and primarily digital pathways to meet the significant and growing demand from students and employers that education delivers employable skills for the workforce of today - 'Education for Employment' ("E4E") - at a reasonable cost. This is driving student demand for shorter, more flexible, and targeted career training pathways. In addition, the workforce skills gap represents an imperative for governments and employers in many geographic markets including the U.S. and is being met through increased government funding on career skills, direct employer involvement in workforce development and growing corporate spend on upskilling. These demand dynamics are driving overall growth in the workforce skills market and moving learning increasingly online. Both of these trends were further accelerated through the COVID-19 pandemic.

Against these significant market opportunities, our strategy is to:

- grow our digital user base with high-quality and affordable digital solutions;
- be a leader in the large and rapidly growing Education for Employment segment; and
- leverage our core assets and capabilities to create value across adjacent markets and through economies of scale.

Through a customer centric strategy, focused on reaching millions of students with high quality and affordable digital learning solutions to enable them to unlock the futures they strive for through education, we are also enabling sustainable revenue growth and unlocking growth opportunities for our shareholders, employees, and the other stakeholders in our Company.

***Grow our digital user base with high quality and affordable digital solutions.*** In our core U.S. Higher Education business, which represents over 50% of our annual revenues, we continue to focus on the significant digital growth opportunities in the industry, including winning new digital adoptions, moving existing adoptions to digital and driving sell-through and usage of existing digital users. To capture these opportunities, we are continuing to invest in our differentiated technology platforms, high quality content and faculty services. In parallel, we will continue to lead the industry in affordability, innovate our commercial models and invest in our go to market capabilities.

Our innovative digital solutions are based on deep research and understanding of today's students and their workflow, which increases the usefulness and desirability of the solutions by both faculty and end users. The growth in our digital business gives us access to a greater number of students in any given classroom and generates new sources of revenue from our existing adoption customers. In contrast to print publications, our digital products cannot be resold or transferred. We therefore realize revenue from every end user, which doubles the value capture of the average class using Cengage materials and results in recurring and predictable revenue streams. Digital formats also free us from traditional publishing cycles, increasing our speed-to-market and affording us greater ability to tailor our offerings by course and even by specific faculty and student preferences.

In recent years, we launched a number of initiatives to lower the barrier of entry to affordable learning while preserving student and instructor choice. The result has been higher digital penetration, shifting users towards the most effective and accessible digital solutions. The key pillar of our affordability strategy is Cengage Unlimited, our subscription service that provides access to our full catalog of digital courseware (when enrolled in a course) and eTextbooks for \$119.99 per semester (\$179.99 for annual, \$239.99 for two-year subscriptions). Beginning in August 2020, Cengage Unlimited eTextbook

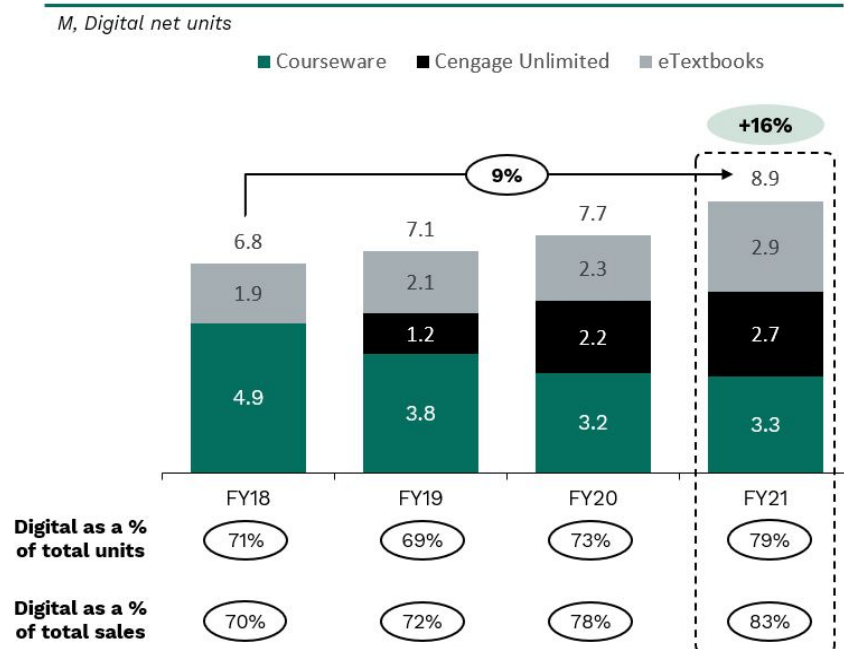


subscription option, excluding homework solutions, was available to students for \$69.99 per semester. We complement our Cengage Unlimited subscription with two fast-growing institutional-bill models:

- Cengage Unlimited for Institutions: for schools that want lowest possible per unit cost, reliable cost visibility, and institutional services, Cengage Unlimited for Institutions is the only contracted, multi-year school per-seat license model in the industry.
- Inclusive Access: for schools that have chosen the Inclusive Access model to increase digital access and reduce cost per unit, Cengage offers a well-established and comprehensive Inclusive Access offering in partnership with institutions and channel partners.

This continuing strategy in U.S. Higher Education has been successful in growing digital users. Over the last four years, our U.S. Higher Education business has increased net sales of digital units by a CAGR of 9%. This increase in digital units has resulted in digital net sales now constituting the significant majority of our U.S. Higher Education total net sales, with digital net sales representing 83% of total net sales in the fiscal year ended March 31, 2021.

### 8.9M digital units with accelerated growth during COVID



Courseware solutions (MindTap, WebAssign) include an eTextbook plus critical learning assessments, class activities, quizzes, videos / simulations, etc. All digital solutions (courseware and eTextbooks) include faculty teaching resources, integration into learning management systems and test banks.

Across our International Higher Education, Secondary Education and English Language Teaching businesses we are following broadly similar strategies to grow digital users, refined to the customer needs and dynamics of each segment. The digital strategies in these segments leverage our core technology capabilities and approach, namely, to build products and platforms, with underlying features and functionalities which can be leveraged across our segments to create competitive advantage. For example, in the fiscal year ended March 31, 2021, we launched Cengage Unlimited into certain international higher education geographic markets and we leverage the U.S. Higher Education MindTap courseware platform to deliver a tailored digital experience in secondary education through our MindTap School solution. We have strong digital momentum across these segments – in the fiscal year ended March 31, 2021, digital net sales were 31% of total net sales in International Higher Education, with the equivalent measures being 61% in Secondary Education and 44% in English Language Teaching.

In the research industry, we have digitized virtually all of our reference content and enhanced it with interactive digital tools. As a result, we derive more than 80% of our domestic revenues in this segment from digital products.



***Be a leader in the large and rapidly growing Education for Employment segment.*** While growing for years, demand for shorter, affordable and more career-focused alternative training pathways is now exploding, with COVID-19 acting as a catalyst in sharply accelerating demand.

Our Workforce Skills segment, including our ed2go business, is at the forefront of our efforts to play a crucial role supporting learners who seek education and skills to be successful in their careers. ed2go partners with colleges to offer out-of-the-box online certificate training courses in career-focused disciplines. Benefiting from more learners choosing non-degree, certificate pathways and more institutions opting to deliver these courses online, ed2go grew net sales by 46% during the fiscal year ended March 31, 2021 and established its leading position in the rapidly growing continuing education market.

Through partnerships with Higher Education institutions, we are proud to have lifted thousands of learners onto a better career trajectory, with the potential for higher earnings, during this fiscal year. Looking ahead, we are aggressively scaling and expanding ed2go through investments to increase enrollment capacity, lead generation and conversion, to broaden distribution and add channel partners, and to expand the course catalog in high demand verticals.

Achieving our goal of being a leader in getting learners career-ready, not just degree ready, leads us to think broadly, inclusive of all assets in our portfolio, to support those who seek career-specific skills across a range of learning pathways. We have termed the comprehensive opportunities in the short duration, online, affordable reskilling and upskilling markets as Education for Employment (“E4E”). With career-focused products and services available across our portfolio including our ed2go and Milady businesses as well as in the US and International vocational and trades training market, the secondary Career & Technical Education market and the private language school markets, we already have a strong foothold in this space.

We will leverage our core content and digital delivery capabilities to align with changes in the job market and learner preferences as well as to support the robust investment that employers, governments, and learners will spend on career-focused training. With the depth and breadth of our content, our digital capabilities, scale and customer reach, Cengage is well positioned to become a leader in E4E.

***Leverage our core assets and capabilities to create value across adjacent markets and through economies of scale.*** Over the course of many years, we have pursued a corporate portfolio strategy that leverages our core content assets, technology platforms and business enabling capabilities across industry segments and international geographies where we can hold a leading position. We are further focused on segments where there is growth in underlying demand and for digital solutions.

In International Higher Education our strategy extends our U.S. Higher Education intellectual property and digital solutions into major English-speaking markets where we have established leading positions, including Canada, Australia and the United Kingdom, as well as selective large and growing markets (e.g., India).

In Secondary Education, our strategy is focused on the career and college-readiness segment and the provision of learning solutions to prepare 6th-12th grade students to be successful post-high school, whether in college or employment. In these segments, we also leverage U.S Higher Education content and digital solutions to serve the growing Advanced Placement & Electives and Career and Technical Education markets, where we have a leading position.

In support of our go to market strategies, we have developed leading capabilities at scale in technology and digital solutions, distribution and customer service, and content development, which together with other corporate enabling functions, we leverage across our industry segments. This approach delivers competitive advantage, improves our speed to market and generates significant economies of scale. Further underpinning our strategy is the progressive evolution of our operating model aligned to the digital transformation of our business and our people and culture which are key drivers of innovation and performance.

***To support the growth of our digital offerings across the Company we employ approximately 850 full-time product development and technology employees, to develop innovative digital platforms and solutions.*** Our digital solutions are designed to enhance and complement our content to improve student engagement and learning outcomes. These digital solutions include courseware solutions, assessment solutions, adaptive tools, and analytics. We have made substantial investments in our technology infrastructure and are a leader in the development of digital content, pedagogy, and tools in our industry. Over the past few years, Cengage has distinguished itself from competitors by focusing its digital product development on serving students as well as faculty. For example, MindTap complements traditional faculty tools and

assessments with student-centered features such as resource centers, personalized learning tools and proprietary analytics to analyze and help advance each student's individual learning.

***Our strong segment positions are driven by industry leading distribution and customer service capabilities.*** In U.S. Higher Education, we have a sales force of approximately 450 sales consultants who directly interact on a daily basis and maintain long-standing relationships with our adopting instructors and customers. Our sales force scope and relationships allow us to sell multiple products across our industry and more easily introduce and train customers on our new digital product offerings. In addition, our U.S. customer support and services organization of approximately 400 employees work directly with customers to support product adoption, customization, and implementation. In any given season, we directly interact with customers in thousands of institutions to introduce and explain our products, secure adoptions, ensure product availability through on-site and off-site channel partners, and support implementation and usage of our solutions. We are a best-in-class provider of services to faculty and institutions to help them set-up, customize and grow usage of their adopted digital solutions. Our distribution network and customer relationships are distinct competitive advantages. Our long-standing relationships with customers additionally provide a source of stability for our business through repeat business across the industry. In our other segments we have established and dedicated sales forces, and in Secondary Education and International Higher Education, we leverage our core U.S. customer services organization to provision and support our digital solutions.

***Our content strategy is built around industry-leading authors, differentiated content and digital first content development capabilities.*** Our ability to develop authoritative, pedagogically-sound content linked to our digital solutions and assessments that leads to demonstrably better learning outcomes is one of our core competencies. Our content differentiation is a result of our long-term partnerships with authors who are recognized experts in their fields and with third-party licensors of authoritative research materials. We have been successful in attracting talented authors and developing long-term, collaborative relationships. For example, in U.S. Higher Education, two of our leading authors include (1) N. Gregory Mankiw, former Chairman of the President's Council of Economic Advisers and among the most respected authors of texts in introductory economics, and (2) Carl Warren, the author of our well-known accounting franchise now in its 28th edition. We typically own the copyright of the materials our authors produce and our agreements with authors usually include favorable non-compete clauses. We have demonstrated our content development capabilities across disciplines and product formats, including a deep understanding of, and commitment to, the process needed to produce high-quality learning solutions. In the research industry, we also maintain long-term agreements for third-party licensed materials from leading content providers, including the American Antiquarian Society, the Bodleian Library at Oxford, The British Library, The Financial Times, The Library of Congress, Princeton University, and scores of leading research libraries. In the ELT and school markets, we operate as National Geographic Learning, leveraging our exclusive relationship with National Geographic which provides access to the world class National Geographic brand and content.

We have a world-class culture and executive management team with proven track record of outperformance through innovation in the quickly evolving education market. Led by Chief Executive Officer, Michael E. Hansen, the senior management team have consistently prioritized the development of our culture as a key enabler of our strategy and driver of performance. We have built a battle-tested, boldly pragmatic, performance-oriented culture anchored in a shared sense of purpose and trust. Our Credo and Ethos are enthusiastically owned and embodied by our more than 4,000 employees around the globe. Our culture is the engine of our strong track record of transformation, innovation, and performance.

## Segments

During the fourth quarter of the fiscal year ended March 31, 2021, we changed our segment reporting structure to better align with the strategic objectives of the Company. Our previous reportable segments, Learning and International have been recast to conform to the current presentation. Following this change, we are organized into six reportable segments on the basis of products and services provided by each segment, identified as follows:

- U.S. Higher Education;
- International Higher Education;
- Secondary Education;
- Workforce Skills;
- English Language Teaching; and
- Research

## ***U.S. Higher Education***

In the United States, we are a leader in higher education providing affordable and easy to use quality digital solutions with differentiated customer service and support. We produce primarily digital courseware solutions, course materials and associated services for the academic (non-profit and for-profit higher education institutions) markets. Our core business is comprised of trusted quality solutions, student-centric affordability, marquee authors, and distinct faculty service. For the fiscal year ended March 31, 2021, our U.S. Higher Education segment generated approximately \$651.2 million and \$373.9 million of our total Adjusted Revenues and Adjusted EBITDA less Pre-Publication Costs, respectively.

### **Market**

The higher education market is comprised of students, professors, and institutions of higher education, primarily two- and four-year colleges and universities, vocational programs, as well as for-profit schools. The United States has a large and complex higher education system with over 4,300 Higher Education institutions, more than one million active faculty, and approximately 18 million students enrolled in, on average, five courses per year.

In higher education, according to Management Practice Inc. (“MPI”) survey results of the top six academic publishers, sales of publisher created course materials were approximately \$2.7 billion in 2020 including new digital and print products, excluding purchases of used and rental print products in the secondary market. Industry estimates and internal research suggests college students spend approximately \$7 billion in required course materials, which includes spend in used and rental textbooks. Cengage has minimal presence in used and rental segments, with participation limited to a well established textbook rental program in conjunction with external partners. Faculty and students have progressively increased the adoption of digital solutions, which provide better outcomes and more effective learning solutions for students at affordable price points, leading to strong and continuing growth in digital sales and increasing penetration of the used and rental segment.

The course materials industry is stable with a loyal customer base with >90% retention rates. Faculty, who are the main decider of which materials to use, tend to build their curriculum and teaching around our products, resulting in an average life per adoption (with new students coming in every semester) of roughly ten years. Competition in the segment is based on content (brand, pedagogy, and author relationship), technology and platform capabilities, customer service relationships and distribution (Cengage has over 700 U.S. Higher Education sales, marketing, and support employees) and student affordability. Cengage has differentiated against large competitors through commercial innovation, service, and quality of digital solutions and trusted content in key discipline areas including Economics, Accounting, and Calculus.

### **Products and Services**

- *Digital Solutions.* Cengage is a leader in providing a broad range of digital solutions to students, faculty, and institutions.
- *eTextbooks.* Cengage eTextbooks are the digital version of the textbook and are available for all Cengage titles across more than 550 courses. In addition to providing access to the content, Cengage eTextbooks allow students to make highlights, take notes, and use text-to-speech functionality to increase their engagement with materials. Instructors and students choose Cengage eTextbooks (over traditional print textbooks) to improve student affordability and access. Students can get immediate access to Cengage eTextbooks from anywhere at any time (both online or off) and thru any device (computer, tablet, or mobile phone). In addition, Cengage eTextbooks can easily integrate into college and university learning management systems to provide a consistent learning environment for students across courses.
- *Courseware Solutions.* Cengage courseware combines a Cengage eTextbook with an interactive suite of digital learning solutions designed to engage students and offer instructors choice in content, platforms, devices and learning tools. Born out of industry demand and developed based on pedagogically sound principles, our leading platforms include MindTap, with disciplines such as Business & Economics, Social Sciences, Trades & Skills; WebAssign, with disciplines such as Mathematics and Physics; Skills Assessment Manager (“SAM”), with disciplines such as Introductory Computing; Cengage NOW (“CNOW”), with disciplines such as Accounting; and Online Web-based Learning (“OWL”), with disciplines such as Chemistry. These platforms incorporate customizable apps developed by Cengage and independent developers that actively encourage students to interact with their course content, as well as their peers and instructors. Cengage courseware combines authoritative content with a structured but highly flexible and extensible delivery platform to enable instructors and students to incorporate open content in the context of their coursework. Cengage courseware also allows faculty to see individualized engagement

## CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.

scores per student and areas where students require additional support. We have over 400 courses in the market across disciplines. The platform is scalable and flexible, enabling us to easily add new course platform features and functionality across all or develop discipline-specific features as needed. Individual adoption analytics, as well as comparative white papers performed over many years, prove that Cengage courseware leads to better learner outcomes. For example, in a recent study compiled using qualitative and quantitative data from over 10,000 students at 100 institutions, MindTap was proven to deliver improved student outcomes including:

- A 14% improvement in overall course grades for students using MindTap versus students not using MindTap.
  - Instructors using MindTap saw a 17% reduction in the number of drops, fails, and withdrawals in their course.
  - 71% of students said MindTap increased their confidence in understanding course materials.
  - 20% increase in homework scores for students using MindTap.
- *Cengage Unlimited.* Cengage Unlimited is the first-of-its-kind subscription service for digital higher education materials. A subscription provides access to thousands of products across more than 75 disciplines and more than 550 courses for one price-\$119.99 per semester, no matter how many Cengage products are used. Students also have the option to rent print textbooks. Additionally, students have access to learning materials such as flash cards, test preps, study guides, and support materials to ensure college success. Subscribers can prepare and plan for their careers with dozens of modules on career readiness. We also offer an eTextbook subscription that provides access to all Cengage eTextbooks and the option to rent up to four printed textbooks. This subscription gives students access to thousands of eTextbooks for \$69.99 per semester. Since launch in 2018, we have sold 4.4 million subscriptions that have resulted in total student savings of \$330 million.
  - *Print textbooks and materials.* Cengage publishes a wide variety of print products including textbooks, study guides, laboratory exercises, instructor editions and supplemental products. These materials are based on the same best-in-class authoritative, reliable, and current content from our extensive list of leading authors across all major academic disciplines which feature in our digital products. We maintain leading positions in many major disciplines and publish textbooks by several of the most talented and well-known academic authors such as Ron Larson in mathematics and N. Gregory Mankiw in economics. In many cases, our print products are sold together and complement our digital solutions.
  - *Services.* Cengage offers a variety of services to complement our products. Our services include course development, custom content development and direct assistance to instructors and students to support effective implementation and ongoing use of our digital and print solutions.

### ***International Higher Education***

Cengage's International Higher Education business provides learning materials and digital solutions to post-secondary markets outside the United States. Our strategy in International Higher Education is to leverage our leading U.S. Higher Education content and digital solutions into major English-speaking markets where we have established leading positions (Canada, Australia, UK, South Africa) as well as selective large and growing markets (e.g., India). This segment also includes our Australia/New Zealand primary and secondary businesses that focus on those domestic markets. For the fiscal year ended March 31, 2021, our International Higher Education segment generated approximately \$128.1 million and \$30.0 million of our total Adjusted Revenues and Adjusted EBITDA less Pre-Publication Costs, respectively.

### **Market**

We sell our international higher education products and services into more than 150 countries, with the majority of revenues being derived from those large English-speaking countries where we have leading positions. We serve these global territories through over 200 sales professionals based in 31 countries. The international higher education market is estimated to encompass approximately 200 million students in tertiary education outside the U.S., with enrollment projected to grow by more than 3% annually over the medium term driven by developing countries. In our fiscal year ended March 31, 2021 the business was impacted by significant COVID-19 driven declines in enrollment and widespread disruption to distribution channels, which we believe to be temporary and expect enrollment and demand to recover in fiscal year 2022 and beyond. Future growth is also expected to be driven by increased adoption and demand for digital products, which whilst growing

strongly from a low base, accelerated sharply in response to COVID-19. Digital net sales grew 18% last year and accounted for 31% of total net sales with over 700,000 students using courseware solutions.

### **Products and Services**

In the international markets, we primarily provide both print and digital U.S. course materials directly or adaptations thereof for various local industries. These product categories represent approximately 75% of our annual International Higher Education revenues. The balance of our annual revenues is derived from the production and sale of course materials produced by local authors and other in-market services.

### ***Secondary Education***

Cengage Secondary Education is a leader in the career and college-readiness segment providing learning platforms and content to prepare 6th-12th grade students to be successful post-high school – whether continuing their education into traditional post-secondary, degree conferring options or pursuing skills or vocational training. Cengage Secondary Education programs in Science, Technology, Engineering and Math (“STEM”), Social Sciences, Advanced Placement & Electives (“AP&E”), and Career and Technical Education (“CTE”) are used in over 15,000 middle and high schools in the United States. For the fiscal year ended March 31, 2021, our Secondary Education segment generated approximately \$131.8 million and \$46.2 million of our total Adjusted Revenues and Adjusted EBITDA less Pre-Publication Costs, respectively.

### **Market**

The U.S. 6th to 12th grade market is the launch pad into higher education or the labor market. It is driven by open territory sales, where individual public-school districts determine which educational products to use and state adoption sales, wherein states approve certain products for use in public schools statewide. This market is linked, in part, to state and local budget cycles. Within the U.S. secondary education industry, we are focused on providing learning programs that help students develop skills to succeed in their college or professional aspirations through specific disciplines that are closer to our core higher education offering, including AP&E and CTE.

### **Product and Services**

Cengage holds leading positions in select disciplines, including AP&E, CTE, STEM, Social Sciences and ELT. These disciplines have more attractive growth fundamentals than the school industry as a whole, enabling Cengage to leverage our existing assets in this market, while avoiding the impact of the cyclicity of the broader school industry on our business. Cengage’s offerings to the school market are part of a partnership with National Geographic. The brand and content are leveraged across our ELT products, the National Geographic Learning science and social studies programs, and elementary school level science curriculum using the vast collection of National Geographic images, videos, maps, illustrations, and articles.

### ***Workforce Skills***

Cengage provides post-secondary and continuing education online courses, offering students the opportunity to upskill and reskill outside the traditional U.S. higher education degree-conferring path. Our ed2go business builds market-leading learning experiences with employers and universities to prepare people for fulfilling careers in the highest demand industries such as healthcare, IT, business and marketing and technical trades. Our unique partner model supports career training and growth with many programs directly leading to professional credentials while also granting the learner a choice of formats and instructor models (including instructor moderated and self-paced). Our ed2go business includes over 1,200 courses including courses focused on high-demand subjects, including IT, Health and Trades, with over 160,000 annual paying students and over 1,200 colleges, non-profits, and corporate partners. For the fiscal year ended March 31, 2021, our Workforce Skills segment generated approximately \$44.0 million and \$11.4 million of our total Adjusted Revenues and Adjusted EBITDA less Pre-Publication Costs, respectively

### **Market**

Providers in the skills market create learning solutions and other related materials for learners who are seeking job training, certification or continuing professional education in vocational schools, academic institutions, and continuing education programs. The skills industry spans a wide range of vocational study areas and customers include academic institutions and learners, employers who provide training to their employees, workforce boards and individuals who are seeking professional advancement. This market is fueled by the close link between improvement in training and skills and employee success in the form of job placement, promotion, and productivity. The online skills industry, which we serve

through MindTap course solutions as well as stand-alone businesses, continues to grow as learners migrate from traditional classrooms to virtual learning environments, a trend which was sharply accelerated through the COVID-19 pandemic.

### **Product and Services**

Through ed2go, Cengage provides an online learning platform with more than 1,200 instructor-led and self-paced courses featuring a wide range of topics, including certification prep courses designed for people to re-enter the workforce or change jobs. The offering includes short skills-based courses that cost approximately \$90 and take 6-9 weeks to complete, and instructor-led Advanced Career Training vocational courses which cost approximately \$1,800 and take 6-9 months to complete. ed2go partners with over 1,200 academic, non-profit, and corporate partners, to deliver these courses, including Continuing Education departments at both 2-year and 4-year colleges and universities. In addition to allowing learners to receive a highly valued certificate of completion from the partner institution, this partnership significantly reduces the cost of learner acquisition.

### ***English Language Teaching***

Operating under the National Geographic Learning (“NGL”) brand, Cengage’s ELT business provides a full range of English language curriculum and digital solutions to academic and general English markets, globally. We currently serve over 65 million students and 55,000 institutions globally, with China being our largest market. Our solutions span across the full spectrum of preK-12, Higher education and professional/adult training segments. For the fiscal year ended March 31, 2021, our English Language Teaching segment generated approximately \$67.2 million of our Adjusted Revenues, heavily impacted by COVID-19 related market contractions, and a negative contribution of \$(5.3) million to our total Adjusted EBITDA less Pre-Publication Costs.

### **Market**

As the global economy grows and becomes more interconnected, proficiency in English provides an expanded set of opportunities to learners worldwide. Mastery of the English language is the gateway to a more promising life and career for millions of people around the world. We have sales in more than 100 countries through regional sales organizations which serve North America, Latin America; Europe, the Middle East and Africa; China and Asia. The markets for ELT materials in the regions in which we operate is estimated to be \$1.9 billion and estimated to be growing at a long-term rate of around 5% per year as the number of students increases. In the fiscal year ended March 31, 2021, this segment which has traditionally had a high dependency on in person teaching, was severely impacted by COVID-19 resulting in widespread school closures and reduced enrollment. We believe these impacts to be temporary and expect demand to recover in fiscal year 2022 and beyond, together with increased adoption of digital solutions to support demand for remote online and hybrid learning solutions which were accelerated by COVID-19.

### **Products and Services**

Our ELT business serves a broad spectrum of learners from preK-12 students to adults in both public and private learning settings. We provide English language curriculum and digital solutions under the globally recognized and admired NGL brand. Our exclusive partnership with NGL provides us with a significantly differentiated position in the language learning market. Whereas English language learning was traditionally taught through the outdated lens of English cultural heritage, NGL reimagined language learning as a means of connecting students to the spectacular natural and social world around them. Through the stories, ideas, photography and video of National Geographic and TED – combined with Cengage’s innovative learning platforms – we create English programs that are inspiring, real, and relevant. Using our English language programs, students learn about their world by experiencing it.

Our National Geographic Learning business focuses on expanding Cengage’s market share by concentrating investment on flagship products and on Go-To-Market teams addressing the most profitable segments in Latin America, the Middle East, Europe and Asia.

### ***Research***

Through our Gale business, we offer research and learning platforms to libraries around the world, and we publish original content, primary source archives and aggregated periodicals for colleges, universities, schools, and businesses. For the fiscal year ended March 31, 2021, our Research segment generated approximately \$184.2 million and \$76.8 million of our total Adjusted Revenues and Adjusted EBITDA less Pre-Publication Costs, respectively.

## **Market**

Publishers and aggregators in the library research market distribute journals, encyclopedias and directories, periodical databases, primary-source research archives and scholarly monographs. These materials are principally sold to academic, public, K-12, corporate and government libraries. The most recently available total institutional spending information by libraries in schools and universities was nearly \$6.0 billion in the United States and \$17.0 billion globally in 2019. The research industry has experienced increased demand for digital content with enhanced functionality, accessibility, authority, and depth that are differentiated from free content available on the Internet. Increasingly, libraries are investing in technologies to organize and manage vast amounts of digital content and to provide analytical tools for scholarly research.

## **Product and Services**

Gale differentiates itself as a humanities and social sciences publisher and education-focused company serving lifelong learning needs through K-12, public and academic libraries. It holds a unique position within the research space as both a producer of original content in predominantly digital form, and an aggregator of primary sources journals and databases. Gale has partnerships with leading research libraries and national archives to digitize rare historical content from around the world, affording a truly global product experience and opening new avenues of scholarship for researchers. Its digital content repository serves as the source for hundreds of online research databases that are used in libraries and learning institutions worldwide.

Gale extends its content from the library to the classroom by integrating into learning managements systems, as well as Cengage's courseware. Through innovative digital products that are mobile-responsive and easily adaptable, Gale delivers content and technology that integrate seamlessly into classroom curriculum, driving utilization within student, faculty, and researcher workflow.

Gale sells directly to libraries in communities, schools, and universities as well as to library consortia. Gale has direct representatives in all major developed countries, having expanded and is expanding its sales presence in the Middle East and Asian markets. In addition to selling to libraries, Gale also licenses its proprietary and third-party content for integration within web-based information providers. Gale currently has strategic business distribution arrangements with many leading information services, including Associated Press, Amazon.com, Inc., Bloomberg, Google, Inc., LexisNexis, National Geographic Society, Smithsonian Institution, and The British Library.

## **Competition**

We operate in a highly competitive industry with significant established competitors across all the segments in which we operate. Differentiating factors in our industry include quality of content and digital solutions, customer service and support, price and affordability, and reputation. Our traditional competitors in the U.S. and International higher education industry are Pearson, McGraw-Hill, Macmillan, WW Norton, Oxford University Press, John Wiley & Sons, and over 100 smaller traditional content material providers. Our secondary education primarily competes in the U.S. with McGraw Hill. Our workforce skills competitors also include Pearson and Wiley, as well as Coursera. Globally, our ELT brand competes with Pearson, Cambridge and Oxford University Press and our Gale brand competes with ProQuest, EBSCO Information Services and SAGE Publications Inc. In addition, we are increasingly competing with Open Education Resources ("OER") and self-assembled instructor materials. Competitive positions and players can vary significantly on a discipline-specific basis. In addition, we compete for student share of wallet with alternative options to new course materials, including used and rental options, counterfeit textbooks, illegal PDFs, and non-consumption.

## **Organization and Operations**

### **Our Sales and Distribution Model**

In U.S Higher Education we sell and distribute our products directly to students through our e-commerce channels, directly to educational institutions and through channel partners and college bookstores. In the majority of cases, the underlying driver of a sale is the adoption of Cengage solutions by instructors to support courses they are teaching. Cengage and our competitors influence the decisions governing the required solution used for a course by marketing directly to the instructors responsible for selecting their course materials and through the extensive and leading services we offer to support faculty in setting up and delivering online courses and digital learnings solutions. The selection of course materials is referred to as an "adoption" in the industry. Our professional sales force has well established relationships with faculty across many colleges and focus on securing adoptions as well as helping faculty and students realize the full potential of the adopted solution.



With the launch of Cengage Unlimited in 2018 and growth in digital solutions, our direct to student sales channel has grown significantly and represented around 31% of total U.S. Higher Education net sales in the fiscal year ended March 31, 2021. We sell directly to students through Cengage.com, offering subscriptions to Cengage Unlimited, stand-alone digital solutions, eTextbooks, textbook rentals, print textbooks, study aids, and supplemental materials, designed to enable students to choose solutions that have been adopted for their specific course and best satisfy their individual needs. We also employ a sales force that focuses specifically on Cengage Unlimited and other institutional sales opportunities. These sales are typically more consultative processes than adoptions by individual instructors, but often promise greater unit volume and economic value to Cengage.

Outside our own e-commerce channels and institutional sales processes, we distribute our products primarily through campus college bookstores and online book retailers which sell directly to students.

In International Higher Education and ELT, sales processes are broadly consistent with U.S. Higher Education, with demand driven by adoption decisions by faculty and institutions, and sales and distribution largely made through third party distributors and book stores. In International Higher Education, we are investing to expand our e-commerce capabilities to support increased demand for our digital solutions and build direct to student sales. In Secondary Education, demand is driven by adoption decisions at school district or state level, with orders sales fulfilled by us either directly to the educational institution or in certain cases through state depositories.

In Research, we have a dedicated institutional sales force, which has direct sales relationships with academic institutions and libraries. Our Research products are predominantly digital solutions and services, which deliver our digital platforms.

### **Technology, printing and binding and fulfillment**

**Technology**—The transition from print to digital has enabled us to simplify and transform our operating model and changed our cost structure as resources shifted from manufacture and distribution of physical products to the development and maintenance of technology platforms and the technology underlying the platforms. The demand for our digital solutions has increased significantly over the past several years and our content and product development processes are aligned to a digital first approach. Our digital products and platforms are designed with our customers' needs in mind, and we seek to optimize user experience, performance, reliability, and security. The underlying technology development of our digital platforms and delivery of our online content is supported by our technology teams whose costs are included in operating costs or capitalized as new capability is developed.

**Printing and Binding**—For our print products, we manage the preparation of products within an approved portfolio of pre-press vendors and printers within strict buying guidelines and pricing agreements. Together with leading providers of print-on-demand technology, we have implemented print-on-demand services that enable us to more efficiently produce certain print products.

**Fulfillment**—We execute our fulfillment and distribution functions primarily from Independence, Kentucky. Additionally, we maintain small distribution and customer service points (some outsourced) to support publishing programs in Canada, Australia, Latin America, Asia and EMEA. By making use of modern distribution systems and materials-handling technologies, we have created efficiencies and reduced operating costs.

### **Corporate Responsibility and Human Capital**

Our purpose—to improve lives through education—guides how we serve students, educators, librarians and employees in over 150 countries and territories worldwide. It informs our commitments to individuals seeking a better life through education, to inclusion and diversity in all that we do and to a healthy and growing business for our employees and investors. Throughout our operations and across the family of Cengage brands, our strong sense of citizenship has guided our growing global company since its inception. Today, as throughout our history, being a good corporate citizen is central to delivering on our purpose, creating shareholder value and leveraging education to create a better, more just society.

As of March 31, 2021, we had approximately 4,400 employees. We believe that we have an engaged and active workforce and that relations with our employees are satisfactory.

We strive to create a transparent, respectful, and inclusive culture where employees feel comfortable bringing their authentic selves to work and contributing new ideas. Cengage leadership and all employees are invited to help create and sustain an employee experience that encourages all members of our team to be their whole selves and participate fully

without consequence. We achieve this in part through a variety of programs that create opportunity for learning, listening, and involvement.

- Honoring diverse voices: Employee resource groups are employee-created and -led internal communities that provide personal connections and affiliations to promote diversity, openness, understanding, acceptance, and inclusiveness, while also contributing to the business. We also hold weekly CEO “Ask Me Anything” meetings, conduct annual engagement surveys, and encourage employees to participate in peer recognition programs.
- Fueling employee growth and development: With nearly \$5 million invested in learning and development since 2017, Cengage helps employees continue their education journeys and strengthen employable skills — through tuition reimbursement, skills courses, and other training opportunities. We also conduct annual company-wide employee engagement surveys and drive top-down approach to evaluating, resolving, and improving employee experiences based on the survey results.
- Supporting employee health and well-being: Cengage offers a range of wellness benefits beyond standard healthcare offerings. Employee Assistance Program resources, mental health coverage, work/life flexibility options, workplace gender transitioning support, and inclusive facilities are just a few of the practices that promote employee satisfaction, well-being, and retention.

### **Seasonality and comparability**

Our revenues, operating profit and operating cash flows are impacted by the inherent seasonality of our business. For the fiscal year ended March 31, 2021, we derived approximately 56.0% and 55.0%, respectively, of our Revenues and approximately 59.0% and 59.0%, respectively, of our Gross Profit in our second and fourth fiscal quarters, which coincide with the academic calendar. See “Selected Quarterly Financial Data,” for additional details on Gross Profit. This seasonality affects our working capital requirements and hence our overall financing needs. For example, we typically incur a net cash deficit from all of our activities in the first quarter of our fiscal year. Changes in our customers’ ordering patterns may impact the comparison of our results in a quarter with the same quarter of the previous year, or in a fiscal year with the prior fiscal year, where our customers may shift the timing of material orders for a number of reasons, including, but not limited to, changes in academic semester start dates or changes in inventory management practices.

As we continue to migrate our product and service offerings towards hosted digital solutions that are delivered over a period of time, the associated revenues will be recognized ratably over the applicable subscription period, with amounts in excess of revenues recognized reflected as deferred revenue. This represents a change from traditional print products where revenues are typically recognized upon shipment of the materials to our customer. Consequently, reported revenues may not be comparable to prior periods as a growing proportion of our revenues are recognized in subsequent periods.

### **Intellectual property**

Substantially all of our proprietary publications and products, including our proprietary customer facing technology, are covered by copyright in the United States and by virtue of international treaties and conventions, in most developed countries throughout the world. As the copyright holder, we have the exclusive right to reproduce, distribute, publicly display, perform, and create derivative versions of the copyrighted works. We also obtain significant content, materials, and technology through license arrangements with third-party licensors.

We have registered certain patents, trademarks, and service marks in connection with our publishing businesses. We also obtain domain name protection for our Internet domains. We believe we have taken, and continue to take, in the ordinary course of business, all appropriate available legal steps to protect our material intellectual property in relevant jurisdictions.

We rely on our authors for substantially all of the content for our learning solutions. In almost all cases, copyright ownership has been assigned to us by the original author(s). In certain specific instances, the author may retain the copyright, granting us an exclusive license to utilize the work. In both cases, the term of copyright under United States law is generally the life of the author plus 70 years (works first published prior to 1978 generally have a copyright term of 95 years from the date of first publication). With respect to materials created as “works made for hire,” the term of copyright is the shorter of 95 years from publication or 120 years from creation. For works assigned or licensed on or after January 1, 1978, authors (or their heirs or estates) have a statutory right to terminate such assignment or license for a five-year period generally commencing 35 years from the date of the assignment or license, or if the grant covers the right to publish the work, the shorter of 35 years from the date of publication or 40 years from the date of the assignment or license. For works first assigned or licensed prior to January 1, 1978, authors (or their heirs or estates) have a statutory right to terminate such

assignment or license for a five-year period generally commencing at the end of 56 years from the date on which the copyright was first secured or January 1, 1978, whichever is later.

**Environmental matters**

We generally contract with independent printers and binders for their services, and our operations are generally not otherwise materially affected by environmental laws and regulations. However, as the owner and lessee of real property, regardless of fault, we could face liability, or our operations could be disrupted if contamination were to be discovered on the properties we own or lease. We are currently unaware of any material environmental liabilities or other material environmental issues relating to our properties or operations and anticipate no material expenditures for compliance with environmental laws or regulations. See “Properties” for a description of our significant leased premises.

## RISK FACTORS

*The following factors affect our business and the industry in which we operate. The risks and uncertainties described below could materially adversely affect our business, results of operations or financial condition. Furthermore, the risks and uncertainties described below are not the only ones we face. Additional risks and uncertainties not presently known or those we currently consider immaterial may also have an adverse effect on our business, results of operations or financial condition. Certain factors make references to non-U.S. GAAP measures. See "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations" for our definition of Adjusted Revenues and Adjusted EBITDA less Pre-Publication Costs and a reconciliation of Adjusted Revenues to revenues and Adjusted EBITDA less Pre-Publication Costs to our net loss.*

***The impact of global public health epidemics, including COVID-19, on our operations, and the operations of our customers, suppliers and print providers, may have material and adverse effects on our business, results of operations, financial condition and cash flows.***

The global spread of COVID-19 has created significant volatility, uncertainty and economic disruption. On March 11, 2020, the World Health Organization declared COVID-19 as a pandemic. The continued proliferation, and ultimately widespread infection, of COVID-19 in the United States and the other jurisdictions in which we operate has the potential for catastrophic impact on the general economy and human health. Governmental authorities have mandated social distancing and imposed quarantine, travel restrictions and isolation measures on significant portions of the population, including mandatory business closures. While vaccines have become available, their availability and distribution are at the discretion of government agencies and it is difficult to ascertain how and when they will impact economic activity.

The extent to which the COVID-19 pandemic impacts our business, operations and financial results will depend on numerous evolving factors that are beyond our knowledge or control or we may not be able to accurately predict. Such factors include the duration and scope of the pandemic and governmental, business and individuals' actions in response thereto, including the shutdown of educational institutions and K-12 schools nationwide, the effect on our supply chain, customers and print providers (including as a result of travel restrictions and our employees, customers and providers working from home or remotely), changes in consumer behavior and preferences, declines in state revenues and related impacts on educational budgets and the demand for, and the ability of our customers to pay for, our products, all of which could have a material adverse impact on our business, results of operations, financial condition and cash flows. Failure to adequately protect the health, safety and well-being of our employees, learners and other stakeholders could adversely impact our reputation, profitability and future growth. Moreover, significant uncertainties exist regarding the format and other safety procedures schools, colleges and universities may follow at various points during the school year. The decisions various schools, colleges and universities make with regards to in-person and/or remote learning and whether to deviate from a chosen format due to outbreaks will impact demand for our products and services in ways that we cannot predict and may be challenging for us to respond to.

***We operate in a highly competitive and rapidly changing industry.***

We operate in a highly competitive industry with significant established competitors. Our traditional competitors in the U.S. and International higher education industry are Pearson, McGraw-Hill, Macmillan, WW Norton, Oxford University Press, John Wiley & Sons, Inc. and over 100 smaller traditional content material providers. Globally, our Gale brand competes with ProQuest, EBSCO Information Services and SAGE Publications Inc. In addition, we are increasingly competing with Open Education Resources ("OER"), self-assembled instructor materials, and alternatives to new course materials such as, used and rental options, counterfeit textbooks, illegal PDFs and non-consumption.

We compete primarily on the basis of quality of content and digital solutions, customer service and support, price and affordability, and reputation. Similar to us, our competitors are continuously enhancing their products and services, developing new business models and investing in technology. Some of our competitors are also acquiring additional businesses in key sectors in order to broaden their offerings.

We continue to adjust our business, including our pricing and delivery models, based on industry conditions and customer demand. We consider additional capital investments, as needed, which may affect profit margins as we strive to maintain or grow industry share, ensure the health of the business and deliver affordable access to quality learning for students.

***Consolidation in the industry in which we operate could place us at a competitive disadvantage.***

Some of the industries in which we operate have experienced consolidation. In particular, the combinations of traditional media content companies and new media distribution companies have resulted in new business models and strategies. Similarly, the consolidation of book retailers has increased our reliance on certain customers. We cannot predict with certainty the extent to which these types of business combinations may occur or the impact that they may have. These combinations could place us at a competitive disadvantage with respect to negotiations, scale, resources and our ability to develop and exploit new media technologies, which could adversely impact our business, financial condition and results of operations.

***Failure to successfully introduce new products, services or technologies could impact our profitability.***

In order to maintain a competitive position, we must continue to invest in new offerings and new ways to deliver our products and services. These investments may not be profitable or may be less profitable than what we have experienced historically. Our failure to successfully introduce new products, services or technologies to the industry could have a material adverse impact on our results of operations, profitability and financial condition.

***We face competition from the used textbook industry and rental textbook programs for sales of our textbooks. The growth of the used textbook and/or rental textbook programs may materially adversely affect our business.***

The academic used textbook industry is still a large source of low-cost alternatives for students. Our textbook customers are often presented with the option to purchase a new or used textbook, and we do not generate revenues from any sale after the initial sale of our printed textbooks. In addition, almost all bookstores and online companies are offering textbook rental programs. Online retail websites continue to make the used textbook industry more efficient and increases student access to used textbooks. The rental market also increases the efficiency of the used textbook industry by increasing the return rate of used textbooks which are rented multiple times. We primarily compete against used and rental textbooks on the basis of supply and price. If we are unable to effectively compete with competition presented by the used textbook and rental textbook market, we could experience a loss in sales and our business, financial position and results of operations may be materially adversely affected.

***Increased accessibility of free or relatively inexpensive information and materials may reduce demand for or negatively impact the pricing of our products and services.***

In recent years, more public sources of free or relatively inexpensive information and research materials have become available, particularly in digital formats and through the Internet, and digital versions of products have been offered at lower pricing than similar products offered in traditional media such as print. We expect these trends to continue. For example, some governmental and regulatory agencies have increased the amount of information they make publicly available for free and certain educational institutions have increased demand for lower priced educational materials, including eBooks at prices below the price of print textbooks. Technological changes and the availability of free or relatively inexpensive information and materials have also affected changes in consumer behavior and expectations. Public and private sources of free or relatively inexpensive information and lower pricing for digital products may reduce demand and impact the prices we can charge for our products and services. To the extent that technological changes and the availability of free or relatively inexpensive information and materials limit the prices we can charge or demand for our products and services, our business, financial position and results of operations may be materially adversely affected.

***Increased availability of lower priced international versions of our products in the domestic industry or higher prices for our products overseas may cause our sales to decline.***

The reversal of case law that made it illegal to import into the United States foreign manufactured version of U.S. Copyrighted products ("Foreign-Manufactured Versions"), without the copyright owner's consent could cause us to experience a loss in domestic sales if increased units of Foreign-Manufactured Versions and other international versions are imported and resold within the United States in competition with our own domestic product offerings. Further, we may experience a loss in sales outside the United States due to increased prices overseas. If we experience a loss of sales domestically due to increased competition from lower priced Foreign-Manufactured Versions or internationally due to lower demand in overseas industries for higher priced products, our business, financial position and results of operations could be adversely affected.

***Increases in the cost of third-party printing and other operating costs could negatively affect our results.***

We are dependent on third-party suppliers to print and bind our traditional paper-based products. The loss of, or a significant adverse change in our relationship with a key print vendor could negatively impact our business, financial condition and results of operations.

We also have other significant operating costs, and unanticipated increases in these costs could adversely affect our operating margins. Higher energy costs and other factors affecting the cost of publishing, transporting and distributing our products could adversely affect our financial results. Our inability to absorb the impact of increases in third-party fees and other costs or any strategic determination not to pass on all or a portion of these increases to customers could adversely affect our business, financial condition and results of operations.

***Our inability to attract or retain the key authors that we need to remain competitive and grow, obtain rights to our authors' works and avoid disputes with our authors may result in a material adverse effect on our results of operations.***

Our success is dependent, in part, on our ability to attract and retain talented authors and develop long-term, collaborative relationships with them. We operate in a number of highly visible industries where there is intense competition for successful, published authors. We enter into publishing agreements with authors that set forth the terms of our relationships, including the payment of royalties and the transfer of copyrights. Our rights to exclusively offer authors' content are dependent on the authors' transfer of copyrights to us. The United States Copyright Act of 1976, as amended, allows an author (or his or her heirs or estate), during a five-year window, to terminate the copyright transfer and thereby regain certain United States rights to their works. For copyrights transferred on or after January 1, 1978, the five-year window begins 35 years from the date of transfer, or if the grant provides a right to publish, the shorter of 35 years from the date of publication or 40 years from the date of transfer. For copyrights transferred before January 1, 1978, the five-year window begins from 56 years from the date on which the copyright was first secured or January 1, 1978, whichever is later. An author that terminates the grant of rights to his or her work could seek to terminate all rights in their works transferred to us or else negotiate more favorable economic or other terms. Further, we may become engaged in disputes with our authors from time to time regarding the terms of the publishing agreements and calculation of the royalty we owe them. Our inability to attract new authors, the loss of certain of our high profile authors, increased costs incurred in attracting or retaining authors, changes in our rights to our authors' works, or becoming engaged in any disputes with our authors could harm our business, results of operations and financial condition.

***We may not be able to attract or retain key employees.***

Our future success depends on the continued services of key employees and our ability to attract and retain new employees with the experience and capabilities necessary to support our needs. The loss of any of the key employees or the failure to attract and retain suitably skilled new employees could adversely affect our business, financial condition and our results of operations.

***We are dependent on third-party distributors, representatives and retailers for a substantial portion of our sales.***

In addition to our own sales force, we offer our products through a variety of third-party distributors, representatives and retailers. We do not ultimately control the performance of our third-party distributors, representatives and retailers to perform as required or to our expectations and we do not control these parties' actions. In addition, some of our distributors, representatives or retailers may market other products that compete with our products. The loss of one or more of our distributors, representatives or retailers or their failure to effectively promote our products or otherwise perform in their functions in the expected manner could adversely affect our ability to bring our products to market and impact our revenues. In addition, measures taken by governmental authorities and private actors to limit the spread of COVID-19 may interfere with the performance of third-party distributors, representatives and retailers, which could adversely affect our ability to bring our products to market and impact our revenues.

***We are a party to at-will contracts with customers and the termination of these contracts could harm our business.***

We currently provide or have agreements to provide products and services to governmental agencies, school districts and educational institutions under contracts that are generally terminable at-will. The fact that these customers have at-will contracts with us gives rise to the possibility that we may have no recourse in the event of customer cancellation of a contract. In addition, contracts awarded by the federal government or states pursuant to a procurement process are subject to challenge by competitors and other parties during and after that process and require that we comply with certain regulatory and pricing requirements. We anticipate that we will continue to rely upon a number of customers under such at-will contractual arrangements. As a result of this reliance, the election by these customers to terminate any or all of their at-will contracts with

us, or the loss of or decrease in business from several of our large customers, could materially and adversely affect our business, financial condition and results of operations.

***We may not be willing or able to maintain the availability of information obtained through licensing arrangements or the terms of our licensing arrangements may change, which may reduce our profit margins or our industry share.***

We obtain significant information through licensing arrangements with content providers. Some content providers may seek to increase licensing fees for providing their proprietary content to us. In such case, our profit margins may be reduced if we are unable to pass along such price increases to our customers. If we are unable to renegotiate acceptable licensing arrangements with these content providers or find alternative sources of equivalent content, the quality of our content may decline and as a result we may experience a reduction in our industry share, and our business, financial condition and results of operations may be materially adversely affected.

***We have and may continue to outsource certain functions to third parties and these arrangements may not be successful, thereby resulting in increased costs, or may materially adversely affect service levels, results of operations and our financial reporting.***

We rely on third party providers of outsourced services to provide services on a timely and effective basis. These services include, among others, printing of textbooks, content development, payroll and benefits administration and specific activities related to general accounting, fixed asset and accounts payable functions. We do not ultimately control the performance of our outsourcing partners and the failure of third-party providers of outsourced services to perform as required by contract or to our expectations could result in significant disruptions and costs to our operations, which could materially adversely affect our business, financial condition and results of operations and our ability to report financial information accurately and in a timely manner.

***A reduction in enrollment at colleges and universities may reduce our revenues or profitability.***

A reduction in student enrollment at colleges and universities could lead to decreased demand for our products. Increases in tuition rates, decreases in family income and net worth and a perception that higher education is not connected to the economy, among other factors, can adversely affect demand for higher education. Further, enrollment levels at colleges and universities outside the United States are influenced by the global and local economic climate (including any effects from the COVID-19 pandemic), local political conditions and other factors that make predicting foreign enrollment levels difficult. Reductions in expected levels of enrollment at colleges and universities both within and outside the United States could adversely affect demand for our higher education products and, therefore, reduce our revenues or profitability.

***Changes in governmental programs and private lending practices may reduce our revenues or profitability.***

Students comprise a large portion of our consumer base. Many of these students depend on government and private funding, in the form of loans or grants, to pay for their education. Many of these programs are highly regulated and subject to frequent and substantial changes. Without sufficient government-sponsored loan programs, some of these students may have to forgo higher education opportunities. As a result, any decreases or delays in government-sponsored student loans or grants could reduce enrollment and thereby lead to decreased demand for our products, negatively impacting our business.

In addition, our library reference customers rely on various sources of governmental funding, primarily from state and local governments, to purchase products and services we offer. Accordingly, any decreases or delays in government funding for libraries, decreases in budgets or changes in spending patterns could negatively impact our business, financial position and our results of operations.

***Changes in U.S. federal, state and local or foreign tax law, interpretations of existing tax law, or adverse determinations by tax authorities, could significantly affect the Company and its shareholders and affect our financial condition or results of operations.***

As a global company, we are subject to taxation at the federal, state and local levels in the United States and various other countries and jurisdictions. As a result, our effective tax rate is derived from a combination of applicable tax rates in the various places in which we operate. Our effective tax rate, however, may be different than experienced in the past due to numerous factors, including tax reform, such as the Coronavirus Aid, Relief and Economic Security Act (the “CARES Act”), changes in the mix of our profitability, the results of examinations of our tax filings, and changes in accounting for income taxes. Any of these factors could cause us to experience an effective tax rate significantly different from previous periods or our current expectations.



On March 27, 2020, the CARES Act was enacted and signed into law. The CARES Act includes several tax related provisions that benefit corporations, including increasing the amount of deductible interest, allowing companies to carryback certain net operating losses (“NOLs”) and increasing the amount of NOLs that corporations can use to offset income. As a result of the CARES Act, the Company increased its fiscal year 2021 and 2020 interest deduction by \$22.4 million and \$79.9 million, respectively.

The change in administration in the United States may lead to new tax legislative initiatives that could materially impact our financials.

***Our failure to win state adoptions could adversely affect our revenue.***

A significant portion of our revenue is derived from sales of K-12 instructional materials pursuant to pre-determined adoption schedules and, in most states, legislative approval of funding for each adoption. Due to the revolving and staggered nature of state adoption schedules sales of K-12 instructional materials have traditionally been cyclical, with some years offering more sales opportunities than others. Precursory to the state board of education or other adopting authority’s selection process of approving materials for the state-adopted list, investments are made to develop or modify instructional materials to meet the individual adoptions curriculum standards. If state funding is delayed or adoption cycles are canceled or postponed our return on investment could be adversely affected. Additionally, in the adoption process for each state, our instructional materials face exclusion from being on the state-adopted list and furthermore, even if our program is approved by the state, we face significant competition in the individual school districts selecting our program. Our failure to develop instructional materials that are selected for the state-adopted list, cancellation or postponement of adoptions, and changes in state funding could materially and adversely affect our sales revenue for the year of adoption and subsequent years.

***Conducting and expanding our operations outside the United States involves special challenges that we may not be able to meet and that may adversely affect our business.***

While our primary markets are in the United States, we operate globally and have targeted certain markets outside North America for continued growth. For the fiscal year ended March 31, 2021, approximately 82% of our Revenues were from the United States and approximately 18% were from markets outside the United States. International operations and any foreign business expansion we may undertake present numerous risks, including:

- challenges in penetrating new markets due, in part, to established and entrenched competitors,
- challenges in developing products and services that are tailored to the needs of local customers,
- challenges in developing and delivering technological infrastructure required to service and support products in local markets,
- customers in certain foreign countries may have longer payment cycles,
- limitations on the repatriation of funds to the United States,
- challenges in enforcing agreements and collecting receivables under certain foreign legal systems,
- lack of local acceptance or knowledge of our products and services,
- lack of recognition of our brands,
- unavailability of joint venture partners or local companies for acquisition,
- instability of international economies and governments,
- changes in legal, regulatory and tax requirements,
- exposure to varying legal standards, including intellectual property protection laws, in other jurisdictions,
- general economic and political conditions in the countries in which we operate, and
- changes in foreign governmental regulations or other governmental actions that would have a direct or indirect adverse impact on our business and market opportunities.

We are also subject to the United States Foreign Corrupt Practices Act and the United Kingdom Bribery Act of 2010 (the “UK Bribery Act”), which generally prohibit companies and their intermediaries from making payments to foreign officials, and with respect to the UK Bribery Act, non-government persons as well, for the purpose of obtaining or keeping business,

and similar requirements in other jurisdictions. The procedures we have in place that are designed to ensure our compliance with such laws may fail or may not protect us against liability as a result of actions that may be taken in the future by our agents and other intermediaries, including those over whom we may have limited or no control. Our success will depend, in part, on our ability to anticipate and effectively manage these and other risks associated with our operations outside the United States.

***Fluctuations between foreign currencies and the United States dollar could have an unfavorable impact on our financial results.***

During the fiscal years ended March 31, 2021, 2020, and 2019, we derived approximately 18%, 22% and 21%, respectively, of our Revenues from our international operations. The financial condition and results of operations of our international operations are primarily measured using the foreign currency in the jurisdiction of operation of such business as the functional currency. As a result, we are exposed to currency fluctuations both in receiving cash from our international operations and in translating our financial results back into United States dollars. Assets and liabilities of our international operations are translated at the exchange rate in effect at each balance sheet date. Our income statement accounts are translated at the average rate of exchange during the period. A strengthening of the United States dollar against the relevant foreign currency reduces the amount of income we recognize from our international operations.

In addition, certain of our international operations generate a portion of their revenues in the applicable local currency or in currencies other than the United States dollar, but purchase inventory and incur costs primarily in United States dollars or currencies whose exchange rates are mechanically tied to the value of the United States dollar. The results of our international operations may be adversely affected by an increase in the value of the United States dollar and we may experience transactional gains or losses because of volatility in foreign currency exchange rates.

We cannot predict the effects of further exchange rate fluctuations on our future operating results. As exchange rates vary, our results of operations and profitability may be materially adversely impacted. The risks we face in foreign currency transactions and translation may continue to increase as we further develop and expand our international operations, which could adversely affect our business, financial condition and results of operations.

***Our revenues and operating results are seasonal and fluctuate on a quarterly basis.***

Our business is seasonal. For the fiscal year ended March 31, 2021 and 2020, we derived approximately 56.0% and 55.0%, respectively, of our Revenues and approximately 59.0% and 59.0%, respectively, of our Gross Profit in our second and fourth fiscal quarters, which coincide with the academic calendar. See “Selected Quarterly Financial Data,” for additional details on Gross Profit. This seasonality affects our working capital requirements and hence our overall financing needs. For example, our fiscal year ends March 31 and we typically incur a net cash deficit from all of our activities in the first quarter. If these seasonal fluctuations are greater than anticipated, our business, financial condition and results of operations may be adversely affected. As we continue to migrate our product and service offerings towards hosted digital solutions that are delivered over a period of time, the associated revenues will be deferred and recognized ratably over the applicable subscription period. With the growth of digital products, accelerated with the launch of Cengage Unlimited in fiscal year 2019 offering 4 month, 12 month, and 24 month subscriptions, our revenue will be recognized over longer periods corresponding to the longer subscription periods. This represents a change from traditional print products where revenues are typically recognized upon shipment of the materials to our customer. Consequently, reported revenues may not be comparable to prior periods as a growing proportion of our revenues are deferred and recognized in subsequent periods. In addition, changes in our customers’ ordering patterns may impact the comparison of our results in a quarter with the same quarter of the previous year, in a quarter with the consecutive quarter or in a fiscal year with the prior fiscal year. As a result of Cengage Unlimited we expect an increase in direct to student sales and a shift in the timing of sales closer to the start of the semester, which can result in sales shifting quarters compared to historical quarterly sales. The results of a quarter may be materially impacted as our customers may shift the timing of material orders for a number of reasons, including, but not limited to, changes in academic semester start dates and changes in their inventory levels and inventory management practices.

***If we cannot successfully implement our business strategy, then our business, financial condition and results of operations could be materially adversely affected.***

Our ability to successfully implement our business strategy is subject to a number of risks, many of which are beyond our control, including:

- rising development costs due to customers’ requirements for more customized instructional materials and assessment programs,

- higher technology and process costs due to increased external cybersecurity threats and increased customer privacy expectations,
- rising advances for popular authors and industry pressures to maintain competitive retail pricing,
- a material increase in product returns or in certain production costs,
- regulatory pressure on textbook prices,
- increased rental of new and used print textbooks,
- industry acceptance of new technology products, including online or computer-based learning,
- higher education enrollment trends,
- changing demographics and preferences of college students and professors that may affect product offerings and revenues, and
- consolidation in the retail and wholesale book industry.

We may not be able to successfully implement our business strategy and, even if successfully implemented, our strategy may not improve our operating results. In addition, we may decide to alter or discontinue aspects of our business strategy and may adopt alternative or additional strategies due to business or competitive factors or factors not currently expected, such as unforeseen costs and expenses or events beyond our control. If we are unable to successfully implement our business strategy, our business, financial condition and results of operations could be adversely affected.

***If we are unable to identify, complete and successfully integrate acquisitions, our ability to grow our business may be limited and our business, financial condition and results of operations may be adversely impacted.***

Our acquisition strategy involves a number of risks, including:

- our ability to find suitable businesses to acquire at affordable valuations or on other acceptable terms,
- competition for acquisition targets may lead to higher purchase prices or one of our competitors acquiring one of our acquisition targets,
- prohibition of any of our proposed acquisitions under United States or foreign antitrust laws,
- the diversion of management's attention from existing operations to the integration of acquired companies,
- our inability to realize expected cost savings and synergies,
- expenses, delays and difficulties of integrating acquired businesses into our existing business structure,
- privacy, security, or compliance risks that exist in the acquired business, and
- difficulty in retaining key customers and management personnel.

If we are unable to continue to acquire and efficiently integrate suitable acquisition candidates, our ability to increase revenues and fully implement our business strategy may be adversely impacted, which could adversely affect our business, financial condition and results of operations.

***We may explore or consummate divestitures and such divestitures may introduce significant risks and uncertainties.***

We may explore or consummate divestitures of assets or business lines. Divestitures involve significant risks and uncertainties that could adversely affect our business, results of operations and financial condition. These include, among others, the inability to find potential buyers on favorable terms, disruption to our business and/or diversion of management attention from other business concerns, difficulties in separating the operations of the divested business and retention of certain liabilities related to the divested business.

***Strategic transactions may introduce significant risks and uncertainties..***

We have been exploring and continue to explore acquisitions of new businesses or assets, divestitures of assets or business lines, credit and equity transaction alternatives and other strategic whole company transactions. Acquisitions, divestitures, credit and equity transaction alternatives and other strategic whole company transactions involve significant risks and uncertainties that could adversely affect our business, results of operations and financial condition. These include,

among others, the inability to find potential targets, buyers or investors, as applicable, on favorable terms, disruption to our business and/or diversion of management attention from other business concerns, difficulties in integrating an acquired business and the assumption of new liabilities relating to the acquired business or separating the operations of the divested business and retention of certain liabilities related to the divested business. We have not determined that a transaction is desirable or that acceptable terms are available and we have not identified any particular alternative or counterparty and may not ultimately pursue any transaction.

***Our business relies on our hosting facilities and electronic delivery systems and any failures or disruptions may adversely affect our ability to serve our customers.***

As we continue to drive our digital business, our dependence on the capacity, reliability and security of our hosting facilities and electronic delivery systems to provide our online library reference materials and other online products to our customers continues to grow. Certain events, such as loss of service from third parties, operational failures, sabotage, break-ins, and similar disruptions from unauthorized tampering or hacking, human error, national disasters, power loss, or computer viruses, could cause our electronic delivery systems to operate slowly or interrupt their availability for periods of time. Any back-up systems or facilities we maintain may also experience interruptions and loss of service. We do not have a back-up facility for some of our online products. If disruptions, failures or slowdowns of our facilities, electronic delivery systems, or back-up systems or facilities occur, our ability to distribute our products and services effectively and to serve our customers may be adversely affected and we may experience loss of revenues and harm to our reputations, resulting in loss of customers.

***We have made, and may be required to make in the future, substantial investments in our technology infrastructure. If we do not make such investments or do not effectively make such investments, our business, financial condition and results of operations may be materially adversely affected.***

The method of delivering our products is subject to technological change. Over the past several years, we have made significant investments in technology, including spending on computer hardware, software, electronic systems, telecommunications infrastructure and digitization of our content. We expect our investment in technology to continue at significant levels. If we do not make such investments or do not effectively make such investments, our business, financial condition and results of operations may be materially adversely affected. In addition, we cannot predict whether technological innovations will, in the future, make some of our products, particularly those printed in traditional formats, wholly or partially obsolete. If we are unable to identify, develop and successfully integrate such technological innovations, or our competitors are able to better integrate such technological innovations, we may not be able to effectively compete, and, therefore, we may experience a loss in sales or we may be required to invest additional significant resources to further adapt to the changing competitive environment.

In addition, without continued investment in our technology, we have increased risk of cybersecurity incident affecting the confidentiality of data we have collected about students, the availability of our systems for use by students, and the integrity of the content and student data, such as test or assignment results. This could lead to an erosion of confidence in our digital offerings, and a loss in sales.

***Technology failure could result in liability, loss of revenue and reputational harm.***

Technology failure may lead to service disruption for our digital solutions and may result from failure in end-user software functionality, hosting and/or business system infrastructure, and connectivity. To meet the demand for innovation and for us to maintain our competitive advantage in the rapidly changing digital industry, we generally deliver and launch products more quickly, which may increase the risks of defects that only become apparent after product launch. Prolonged remediation periods or digital product performance issues may result in liability, loss of revenue and reputational harm.

***A security breach or cyberattack involving our technology infrastructure, our products and services, or our customers' credit and debit card and private data could subject us to material claims and additional costs and could harm our reputation.***

Our customers rely on our products and services to collect, secure, store and transmit confidential information. We are driving more digital usage resulting in further exposure of our technology infrastructure due to an increased userbase. We have access to, collect, transmit and maintain private or confidential information regarding our customers, employees, and our business. Our customers rely on the data in our systems being secured from exposure and protected from manipulation. The complexity of our information technology systems makes them vulnerable to a cyberattack, malicious intrusion, and other significant disruptions. Additionally, there has been a steep rise in attacks such as denial-of-service attacks and ransomware attacks globally, and although we employ security controls to help prevent this type of attack, there is still risk

that we may lose access to critical business data or experience disruption to our systems and security due to a denial-of-service attack or ransomware attack. In addition, we may be unable to identify, or maybe be significantly delayed in identifying, cyberattacks and incidents due to the increasing use of techniques and tools that are designed to circumvent controls and to avoid detection. Our information systems require an ongoing commitment of significant resources to maintain, protect, and enhance existing systems and develop new systems that meet our customer's needs while also providing security, privacy, and compliance with ever-changing threats, regulatory landscape, and customers' patterns. Third party cyberattacks, malicious intrusions, physical or electronic, or other significant disruptions could lead to interruptions and delays in customer processing, loss of data, or manipulation of data. Any such event for which we are, or perceived to be, responsible, in whole or in part, could subject us to claims that could harm our reputation and result in significant costs to defend, settle or satisfy. Any imposition of liability, particularly liability that is not covered by insurance or is in excess of insurance coverage, could materially harm our operating results. We might be required to expend significant financial and other resources to protect against further security breaches or improve our technology infrastructure against further security related incidents. As cybersecurity related incidents continue to evolve, and regulatory focus on these issues continues to expand, additional investments may be required.

***If we do not adequately manage and develop our operational and managerial systems and processes, our ability to manage and grow our business may be harmed.***

We need to continue to improve existing and implement new operational and managerial systems to manage our business effectively. Any delay in the implementation of, or disruption in the transition to, our new or enhanced systems, could adversely affect our business, financial condition and results of operations.

***Failure to comply with privacy laws may cause financial loss and reputational damage.***

We are subject to a wide array of different privacy laws, regulations and standards in the United States and in foreign jurisdictions where we conduct business, including but not limited to (i) the Children's Online Privacy Protection Act and state student data privacy laws in connection with personally identifiable information of students, (ii) the Payment Card Industry Data Security Standards in connection with collection of credit card information from customers, and (iii) various EU data protection and privacy laws, including a comprehensive General Data Privacy Regulation that became effective in May 2018. There has been increased public attention regarding the use of personal information and data transfer, accompanied by legislation and regulations intended to strengthen data protection, information security and consumer and personal privacy. The law in these areas continues to develop and the changing nature of privacy laws in the U.S., the European Union and elsewhere could impact our processing of personal and sensitive information for our employees, vendors and customers.

Our failure to comply with applicable privacy laws, regulations and standards could lead to significant reputational damage and other penalties and costs, including loss of revenue. Our brand and customer trust are critical assets for our Company. In the event of negative publicity regarding our adherence to applicable privacy laws, regulations, and standards, whether valid or not valid, the resulting reputational damage could reduce demand for our products and adversely affect our relationship with teachers, educators and institutions. This reaction may have an immediate and/or long term impact on both new and renewed sales, and may lead to short and/or long term revenue loss.

***Our intellectual property and proprietary rights may not be adequately protected under current laws which could harm our competitive position and materially adversely affect our business, financial condition and results of operations.***

Our success depends, in part, on our proprietary content. Our products are largely comprised of intellectual property content delivered through a variety of media, including textbooks, digital learning solutions and the Internet. We rely on copyright, trademark and other intellectual property laws to establish and protect our proprietary rights in these products. However, our proprietary rights may be challenged, invalidated or circumvented. Our intellectual property rights in the United States, the primary jurisdiction in which we conduct business, are well-established. However, we also conduct business in other countries, such as China and India, where the extent of effective legal protection for intellectual property rights is uncertain, and this uncertainty could affect our current performance and future growth. Moreover, despite copyright and trademark protection, third parties may be able to copy, infringe, illegally distribute, import or resell or otherwise profit from our proprietary rights without our authorization. These unauthorized activities may be more easily facilitated by the Internet. In addition, the lack of Internet-specific legislation relating to intellectual property protection creates an additional challenge for us in protecting our proprietary rights relating to our online business processes and other digital technology rights. The steps taken by us to protect our proprietary information may not be adequate to prevent misappropriation of our content or technology. In addition, our proprietary rights may not be adequately protected because:

- people may not be deterred from misappropriating our technologies despite the existence of laws or contracts prohibiting it,
- policing unauthorized use of our intellectual property can be difficult, expensive and time-consuming (which may divert our management from implementing our business strategy), and we may be unable to determine the extent of any unauthorized use, and
- the laws of other countries in which we may market our products may offer little or no effective protection for our proprietary technologies.

We may also be required to initiate expensive and time-consuming litigation to defend our intellectual property or to maintain our intellectual property. If there is an increase in the scale of unauthorized copying and redistribution of our products, or if we are unable to adequately protect and enforce our intellectual property rights, it would adversely impact our product sales and reduce our revenue, thereby adversely affecting our results of operations and financial condition, as well as our competitive position.

***We may face legal actions against us that could be time-consuming and costly to defend and have other material adverse effects on our business.***

The nature of our business exposes us to the potential for claims by our stakeholders, including our authors, customers and suppliers, related to matters such as contract compliance and intellectual property infringement. In particular our business is at risk for claims regarding copyrights and other intellectual property rights. In addition, our third-party suppliers may also become subject to infringements claims, which in turn could negatively impact our business.

Litigation is expensive and time-consuming and could divert management's attention from our business and litigation could have an adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations. With regard to intellectual property litigation in particular, if there is a successful claim of infringement against us, our customers or our third-party intellectual property providers, we may be required to pay substantial damages to the party claiming infringement, stop selling products or using technology that contains the allegedly infringing intellectual property, or enter into royalty or license agreements that may not be available on acceptable terms, if at all. All of these requirements could damage our business. We may have to develop non-infringing technology and our failure in doing so or obtaining licenses to the proprietary rights on a reasonable or timely basis could have an adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

Additionally, some or all of our expenditures to defend, settle, or litigate any legal proceedings may not be covered by insurance or could impact our cost and ability to obtain insurance in the future. Our business reputation and our relationship with our employees may also be adversely impacted by our involvement in legal proceedings. Even if we are successful in defending a litigation claim, our litigation costs could be significant, and the litigation may divert time and money away from our operations and adversely affect our performance.

The Company is party to various lawsuits from time to time. For information related to the Company's material legal proceedings, see "Legal Proceedings" and Note 17, "Commitments and Contingencies," to our consolidated financial statements.

***Disputes with our customers regarding infringement and piracy of intellectual property may result in a material adverse effect on our results of operations.***

In connection with defending our intellectual property rights and combating piracy, we may have disputes with our customers which may require us to institute expensive and time consuming litigation. These disputes could divert our management's attention, lead to counter claims, and could result in loss of business from these and other customers, which may have a material adverse effect on our consolidated results of operations.

***We continue to be controlled by Apax Partners, L.P., KKR Asset Management, and Searchlight Capital Partners (together, the "Principal Equityholders"), and the interests of the Principal Equityholders may conflict with the interests of other stockholders.***

The Principal Equityholders control CL Holdings II, Inc. and certain of the Company's directors are or have been affiliated with the Principal Equityholders. As a result, the Principal Equityholders can control our ability to enter into significant corporate transactions such as mergers, tender offers and the sale of all or substantially all of our assets. The interests of the Principal Equityholders and their respective affiliates could conflict with or differ from the interests of our other stockholders. For example, the concentration of ownership held by the Principal Equityholders could delay, defer or prevent a change of control of our Company or impede a merger, takeover or other business combination which may

otherwise be favorable for us. If we encounter financial difficulties or are unable to pay our debts as they mature, the interests of the Principal Equityholders and certain of their respective affiliates as equityholders might conflict with the interests of holders of our debt. The Principal Equityholders may also have an interest in pursuing acquisitions, divestitures, financings or other transactions that, in their judgment, could enhance their equity investments, even though such transactions might involve risks to holders of our debt.

Additionally, our Principal Equityholders are in the business of making investments in companies and may, from time to time, acquire and hold interests in businesses that compete, directly or indirectly with us. The Principal Equityholders may also pursue acquisition opportunities that may be complementary to our business, and as a result, those acquisition opportunities may not be available to us. So long as Principal Equityholders continue to indirectly own a significant amount of our equity, even if such amount is less than 50%, they will continue to be able to substantially influence or effectively control our ability to enter into corporate transactions. See “Principal Stockholders” for more information about our Principal Equityholders.

***We could incur impairment charges for goodwill, long-lived assets, and identifiable intangible assets.***

As of March 31, 2021, we had goodwill of \$858.3 million and identifiable intangible assets, net, of \$761.5 million included on our consolidated balance sheet. On an annual basis and whenever events or changes in circumstances indicate that there may be potential indicators of impairment, we are required to perform impairment tests on our goodwill. We test the carrying value of goodwill for impairment at a “reporting unit” level. A goodwill impairment is the amount by which a reporting unit’s carrying value exceeds its fair value, not to exceed the carrying amount of goodwill. Based on the quantitative test of the fiscal year 2021 fourth quarter impairment tests, we concluded that the fair value of our North America reporting unit was less than its respective carrying value, resulting in a goodwill impairment charge of \$9.7 million. This impairment was driven primarily from a reduction in projections due to the higher than expected impact of the COVID-19 pandemic on our previously reported International reportable segment. In addition, we review the carrying values of long-lived assets for impairment whenever events or changes in circumstances indicate that the carrying amounts of the lowest level asset grouping may not be recoverable. Our initial test for impairment compares the asset carrying amounts with the sum of undiscounted cash flows related to that asset grouping. If the carrying value is greater than the undiscounted cash flows of the asset, the individual assets are required to be written down to their estimated fair value. We adopted ASC 842 as of April 1, 2019. During the fiscal years ended March 31, 2021 and 2020, we vacated and ceased use of multiple properties and recorded right-of-use asset impairment charges totaling \$7.7 million and \$2.7 million, respectively. For further detail, see Note 9, “Operational Restructuring, Other Charges and Right-of-Use Asset Impairments,” and Note 18, “Leases,” to our consolidated financial statements. We assessed our long-lived assets for impairment due to the \$9.7 million goodwill impairment charge in the fourth quarter. No further impairments were identified.

If expectations for revenues and cash flows decline or if industry conditions deteriorate, we may not be able to realize the carrying values of our goodwill and long-lived assets and could be required to record future charges for impairment. In addition, future acquisitions may not be as successful as originally anticipated and may result in impairment charges, which could adversely impact our business, financial condition and results of operations.

***There are risks associated with our indebtedness.***

As of March 31, 2021, we had senior notes and a senior secured term loan with aggregate principal balances of \$620.0 million and \$1,628.8 million, respectively, excluding amortization of fees and discount. We also have an asset-based revolving credit facility with a maximum availability of \$225.0 million. See Note 10, “Debt,” to our consolidated financial statements for further discussion on availability. Availability is recalculated monthly and equals the sum of eligible accounts receivable and inventory, as defined in the asset-based revolving credit facility agreement. Our available borrowing base as of March 31, 2021, was \$87.6 million, net of outstanding borrowings and letters of credit.

We may incur additional indebtedness in the future, including under our revolving credit facility or through offerings of debt securities. Our outstanding indebtedness and any additional indebtedness we incur may have significant consequences, including, without limitation, any of the following:

- we will be required to use cash reserves to pay the principal of and interest on our indebtedness;
- our indebtedness and leverage may increase our vulnerability to adverse changes in general economic and industry conditions, as well as to competitive pressure;
- adverse changes in the ratings assigned to our debt securities by credit rating agencies will likely increase our borrowing costs on refinanced or new debt;



- our ability to obtain additional financing for working capital, capital expenditures, acquisitions or for general corporate and other purposes may be limited;
- may limit our ability to renew or extend our revolving credit facility; and
- our flexibility in planning for, or reacting to, changes in our business and our industry may be limited.

Our ability to make payments of principal and interest on our indebtedness depends upon our future performance, which will be subject to general economic conditions, industry cycles and financial, business and other factors affecting our consolidated results of operations and financial condition, many of which are beyond our control. If we are unable to generate sufficient cash flow from operations in the future to service our debt, we may be required to, among other things:

- repatriate funds to the United States at potentially substantial tax cost;
- seek additional financing in the debt markets;
- refinance or restructure all or a portion of our indebtedness;
- sell selected assets; or
- reduce or delay planned capital or operating expenditures.

Such measures might not be sufficient to enable us to service our debt. Our failure to satisfy our obligations under the agreements governing our indebtedness could result in an event of default, which could permit our secured lenders to foreclose on our assets and stock securing such indebtedness. In addition, any such financing, refinancing or sale of assets might not be available on economically favorable terms or at all.

***Changes in the method of determining the London Interbank Offered Rate (“LIBOR”), or the replacement of LIBOR with an alternative reference rate, may adversely affect our financial condition and results of operations.***

Certain of our financial obligations, including our term loan credit facility, which is LIBOR based, and our asset backed revolving credit facility, which may utilize LIBOR as a benchmark for establishing the interest rate, may be impacted by the announced changes in LIBOR. On July 27, 2017, the United Kingdom’s Financial Conduct Authority (“FCA”), which regulates LIBOR, announced that it intends to phase out LIBOR by the end of 2021. On March 5, 2021, the FCA made another announcement providing clarification that while certain LIBOR rates will cease to be published after December 31, 2021, including the 1 week and 2 month USD LIBOR, it will continue to publish the 1, 3 and 6 month USD LIBOR rates through June 2023. The revised timeframe outlined by the FCA may not result in the immediate need to transition to The Federal Reserve Bank of New York’s Secured Overnight Funding Rate (“SOFR”) in our debt instruments, but the declining use of USD LIBOR in the debt capital markets as a primary benchmark rate, may result in volatility in USD LIBOR or illiquidity in markets that rely on LIBOR that cannot be fully predicted, and could have an adverse impact on the market value for or value of LIBOR-linked loans and other financial obligations or extension of credit held by us. Changes in market interest rates may also influence our financing costs and adversely affect our results of operations, cash flows and liquidity.

***Our internal control over financial reporting are comparable but not identical to the requirements under the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002.***

Because we are not a public company, we are not subject to the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, which requires public companies to have and maintain effective disclosure controls and procedures to ensure timely disclosure of material information, and have management review the effectiveness of those controls on a quarterly basis. The Sarbanes-Oxley Act also generally requires public companies to have and maintain effective internal control over financial reporting to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and preparation of financial statements, and have management review the effectiveness of those controls on an annual basis (and have the independent auditor attest to the effectiveness of such internal controls). We are not required to comply with these requirements and therefore we may not have procedures in place at all or that are as effective as those maintained by public companies.

# CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.

## PROPERTIES

Our principal executive office is located at 200 Pier Four Boulevard, Boston, MA. We lease space around the world for the production, delivery, digital hosting services and customer support of our products and services, sales and marketing, and corporate enabling functions. In many locations, our business operations are co-located and utilized for current operations of all segments to achieve synergies and operational efficiencies. The following table describes our principal physical owned and leased properties as of March 31, 2021, including the approximate space, principal uses and lease expiration dates. We are assessing the impact of the COVID-19 pandemic and the nature of the traditional office structure and remote work on our future real estate needs. We believe we will be able to obtain future space as needed on acceptable and financially reasonable terms.

Location	Owned or Leased (Expiration Date of Leases)	Approximate Square Feet	Principal Use of Space
Andover, England	4/20/2091	160,000	Warehouse/Office
Boston, Massachusetts	11/30/2029	117,820 <sup>(1)(3)</sup>	Office
Clifton Park, New York	12/31/2021	92,745	Vacant <sup>(3)</sup>
Farmington Hills, Michigan	Owned	158,364	Office
Independence, Kentucky	9/30/2024	835,000	Warehouse/Office
Mason, Ohio <sup>(2)</sup>	7/31/2021	160,069	Office
Melbourne, Australia	10/5/2022	33,336	Office
Mexico City, Mexico	3/31/2024	37,975	Warehouse
Raleigh, North Carolina <sup>(2)</sup>	4/15/2021	34,015	Office
Sao Paulo, Brazil	3/31/2022	18,522	Warehouse
Singapore, Singapore	12/31/2021	16,706	Office
Temecula, California	3/31/2024	19,486	Office
Washington, D.C.	3/31/2024	14,497	Vacant <sup>(3)</sup>

<sup>(1)</sup> Includes approximately 40,000 square feet of vacant space

<sup>(2)</sup> Currently in the process of renegotiating renewal leases

<sup>(3)</sup> For further detail see Note 9, "Operational Restructuring, Other Charges and Right-of-Use Asset Impairments," to our consolidated financial statements

In addition, we lease several other offices that are not material to our operations.

## **CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**

### **LEGAL PROCEEDINGS**

See Note 17, “Commitments and Contingencies,” to our consolidated financial statements for information regarding our legal proceedings, which information is incorporated herein by reference.

### **MARKET FOR THE ISSUER’S EQUITY**

CL Holdings II, Inc. shares of common stock are not traded on any publicly listed exchange. We are aware that some shareholders have engaged in private transactions as transferees of CL Holdings II, Inc. common stock and are required to become a party to the CL Holdings II, Inc. Shareholder Agreement by submitting an executed joinder agreement to us. CL Holdings II, Inc. has not issued certificates representing shares of our common stock. Rather, we have retained Computershare, Inc. to serve as our transfer agent and to maintain our stock ledger in book entry form.

### **Dividends**

There were no dividends declared in the fiscal years ended March 31, 2021 and 2020. We may declare cash dividends in the future.

### **CHANGES IN AND DISAGREEMENT WITH ACCOUNTANTS ON ACCOUNTING AND FINANCIAL DISCLOSURE**

None.

# CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.

## DIRECTORS AND EXECUTIVE OFFICERS

Name	Age	Position
Michael E. Hansen	60	Chief Executive Officer and Director
Eric Sondag	45	Chairman and Director
Alexandra Bernadotte	50	Director
John D. Dionne	57	Director
Marcelo Gigliani	46	Director
Michael Lomax	73	Director
Nat Zilkha	45	Director
Fernando Bleichmar	44	Executive Vice President, General Manager, U.S Higher Education
Alexander Broich	56	Executive Vice President, President, Cengage Global Businesses
Kermit Cook	43	Executive Vice President, Chief Operating Officer
George Moore	49	Executive Vice President, Chief Technology Officer
Bob Munro	55	Executive Vice President, Chief Financial Officer
Laura Stevens	46	Executive Vice President, General Counsel

### Directors

**Michael E. Hansen** became Chief Executive Officer of Cengage in September of 2012 and has been a Director of Cengage since March 2014. He leads the strategy, performance and ongoing evolution of the global business. With the importance of focus on the rapidly growing post-secondary and continuing education market to upskill and reskill, Michael is also directly overseeing Workforce Skills in an executive capacity. Mr. Hansen has extensive experience in leading organizations through business transformations. Mr. Hansen is a thought leader in the information services sector and he has an expansive track record in developing successful business models and high-performing executive teams. Prior to joining Cengage, between 2006 and 2012, Mr. Hansen was the President and Chief Executive Officer of Harcourt Assessment, the educational materials arm of Reed Elsevier and later became the Chief Executive Officer of Elsevier Health Sciences where he led the transformation of a traditional print publisher into an information-services company. Before joining Reed Elsevier, Mr. Hansen served for several years as Executive Vice President of Operational Excellence at Bertelsmann, leading the portfolio transformation of this \$20 billion global media company. Earlier in his career Mr. Hansen was the lead partner and Chairman of the digital convergence practice at the Boston Consulting Group. Mr. Hansen sits on the Business Advisory Council for ProPublica. Mr. Hansen holds a Master of Law degree from the University of Bonn in Germany and an MBA from Columbia University in New York.

**Eric Sondag** has been the Chairman of the Board of Cengage since May 2014 and has been a Director since March 2014. Mr. Sondag has been a Managing Director of Mid-Large Buyouts at Eurazeo Capital since 2020. Between 2011 and 2020, Mr. Sondag was a Partner at Searchlight Capital Partners, where he played a key role in leading various organizational development initiatives and executing numerous transactions across priority verticals. In his capacity as Chairman of the Board, Mr. Sondag continues to represent Searchlight. Prior to Searchlight, Mr. Sondag was a senior member of the investment team at GTCR, where he worked primarily on investments in the media, information services and consumer industries. He started his career in investment banking at Wasserstein Perella in Chicago in 1998. Mr. Sondag received a BSc from Georgetown University, and completed the Executive Management Program at INSEAD in Singapore. Mr. Sondag serves on the Board of Advisors for Georgetown University's McDonough School of Business.

**Alexandra Bernadotte** has been a Director of Cengage since January 2021. Ms. Bernadotte is the founder and Chief Executive Officer of Beyond 12, a high-tech, high-touch nonprofit that integrates personalized coaching with mobile

technology to increase the number of traditionally underserved students who graduate from college and who translate their degrees into meaningful employment and choice-filled lives. She has more than 18 years of executive management and strategic development experience in both the nonprofit and private sectors. Before creating Beyond 12 in 2009, she served as an Associate Partner at NewSchools Venture Fund, where she oversaw the firm's work to build community and share knowledge among its entrepreneurs. Ms. Bernadotte's previous professional experience includes serving as Executive Director of The Princeton Review's Silicon Valley office; Executive Director of Foundation for a College Education, a nonprofit college access program; co-founder and Vice President of marketing at educational travel startup Explorica; Director of Operations at EF Education; and Operations Manager for a youth substance abuse prevention foundation at the World Health Organization in Geneva, Switzerland. Ms. Bernadotte currently serves on the board of directors of Great Oakland Public Schools and the board of advisors of Foundation for a College Education, the Magnuson Center for Entrepreneurship, and the Presidential Commission on Financial Aid at Dartmouth College. Ms. Bernadotte received her undergraduate degree from Dartmouth College and earned a master's degree with a concentration in policy and organizational leadership from Stanford University. She is an Ashoka Fellow, a Jefferson Award for Public Service winner, a Dartmouth College Social Justice Award and Stanford University Alumni Excellence in Education Award honoree.

**John D. Dionne** has been a Director of Cengage since March 2014. Mr. Dionne is a Senior Advisor of Blackstone Group L.P. and a Senior Lecturer and member of the faculty with the Harvard Business School. He was most recently a Senior Managing Director at Blackstone and Global Head of its Private Equity Investor Relations and Business Development Groups. He also served as a member of Blackstone's Private Equity Investment and Valuation Committees. Mr. Dionne originally joined Blackstone in 2004 as the Founder and Chief Investment Officer of the Blackstone Distressed Securities Fund, the firm's initial entry into the single-manager hedge fund practice, with peak assets under management of \$2 billion. During this period, he also served on the Investment Committees of Blackstone's GSO and Kalix investment businesses. Before joining Blackstone, Mr. Dionne was for several years a Partner and Portfolio Manager for Bennett Restructuring Funds, specializing in investing in financially troubled companies. Mr. Dionne currently serves on the board of directors of Pelmorex Media Inc., Clear Channel Outdoor Holdings, Inc. and Sequential Brands Group. He is a Chartered Financial Analyst and Certified Public Accountant (inactive). Mr. Dionne is a graduate of the Harvard Business School and the University of Scranton.

**Marcelo Gigliani** has been a Director of Cengage since January 2016. Mr. Gigliani is an Equity Partner of Apax Partners, L.P. and Managing Partner of Apax Digital, focusing on growth equity and buyout investments in leading internet, enterprise software, and technology-enabled services companies worldwide. Since joining Apax in 2001, Mr. Gigliani has both led and participated in a number of the Apax funds' investments across Technology, Digital, Media, and Services sectors throughout North America, Europe, and Asia, including Cengage, MetaMetrics, Accurate Background, idealista, Trader Corporation (AutoTrader Canada), Dealer.com, Boats Group, Solita, So Young, and Wizeline. Mr. Gigliani currently also serves on the board of directors of MetaMetrics, Accurate Background, Solita, and Wizeline. Prior to joining Apax Partners, Mr. Gigliani was a consultant at Mercer Management Consulting (now Oliver Wyman), where he advised leading European media and communications companies in digital acceleration matters. Mr. Gigliani received an MBA from Harvard Business School and a BS in Business Administration from Boston University.

**Michael Lomax** has been a Director of Cengage since January 2021. Dr. Michael Lomax has served as President and CEO of United Negro College Fund ("UNCF"), the nation's largest private provider of scholarships and other educational support to African American students, since 2004. Under his leadership, UNCF has raised more than \$3 billion and helped more than 110,000 students earn college degrees and launch careers. At UNCF's helm, Dr. Lomax oversees the organization's 400 scholarship programs, which award 10,000 scholarships a year. He also launched the UNCF Institute for Capacity Building, which helps UNCF's member HBCUs become stronger, more effective, and more self-sustaining. Under Dr. Lomax's leadership, UNCF has fought for college readiness and education reform through partnerships with reform-focused leaders and organizations and worked to further advance HBCUs with Congress, the administration, and the Department of Education. Before joining UNCF, Dr. Lomax was president of Dillard University in New Orleans and a literature professor at UNCF-member institutions Morehouse and Spelman Colleges. He also founded the National Black Arts Festival, was a founding member of the Smithsonian Institution's National Museum of African American History and Culture (NMAAHC) and served as chairman of the Fulton County Commission in Atlanta, the first African American elected to that post. He serves on the board of directors of the KIPP Foundation, Teach for America and the Studio Museum in Harlem. Dr. Lomax received a Bachelor of Arts from Morehouse College, a Master of Arts in English Literature from Columbia University, and a Doctor of Philosophy from Emory University.

**Nathaniel Zilkha** has been a Director of Cengage since January 2020. Mr. Zilkha joined KKR in 2007 and is a Partner of KKR & Co. Mr. Zilkha has held various leadership roles across KKR Credit, including Co-Head of Credit, Head of Alternative Credit and Head of Special Situations. He is a member of the Special Situations Investment Committee, Private

## CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.

Credit Investment Committee, Asia Credit Investment Committee, Credit Portfolio Management Committee, and the KKR Investment Heads Committee. Mr. Zilkha formerly worked in the firm's KKR Private Equity business in the United States and Asia. He is Chairman of the Board for Gibson Brands and a member of the board of directors of Hilding Anders and Telepizza. He also serves as a member of the board of directors of Save The Music, The Apollo Theater, Gibson Givens and the Mount Sinai Children's Center Foundation. Mr. Zilkha graduated cum laude from Princeton University.

### Committees of the Board of Directors

Our board of directors has two committees: the Audit Committee and the Compensation Committee. Both of these committees were established during the May 5, 2014 meeting of the board of directors.

#### The Audit Committee

The Audit Committee is responsible for assisting the board of directors with respect to, among other things, reviewing our financial reporting procedures, internal audits and the performance of our external auditors. The Audit Committee has direct communication channels with our management, as well as with our external auditors to discuss and review specific issues as appropriate. The committee is also responsible for reviewing the quarterly and annual financial statements. The current members of the Audit Committee are John Dionne, Chairman and Nat Zilkha.

#### The Compensation Committee

The Compensation Committee is responsible for assisting the board of directors with respect to the assessment and compensation of the chief executive officer and other executive officers of the Company, the assessment of compensation arrangements, plans, policies and programs and the assessment of benefit and welfare plans and programs of the Company. The current members of the Compensation Committee are Nat Zilkha, Chairman, Eric Sondag and Marcelo Gigliani.

### Code of Business Conduct and Ethics

We have a Code of Business Conduct and Ethics (the "Code") that applies to all employees, officers and directors. The Code is available without charge by written request to the attention of our General Counsel at Cengage, 200 Pier Four Boulevard, Boston, MA 02210.

### Executive Officers

The following sets forth certain information regarding our executive officers, each of whom is a member of the Executive Team and each of whom reports directly to the Chief Executive Officer, except as otherwise noted below. Information regarding Michael Hansen, who serves as a director and executive officer of the Company, may be found in the section entitled "Directors."

**Fernando Bleichmar** currently serves as the Executive Vice President and General Manager U.S. Higher Education for Cengage, a role he has held since 2019. In this position, Fernando leads a cross-functional team focused on helping faculty and institutions navigate the digital transformation and emerging models of higher education, while delivering affordable, quality digital learning to students through the continued success of Cengage Unlimited. Prior to his current role, Mr. Bleichmar served as Chief Product Officer for Cengage, where he was responsible for Cengage product development and innovation. Before that, he joined Cengage in 2014 as Chief Strategy Officer, serving as Chief Strategy Officer, spearheading the Company's approach to data-driven decision-making and student-centered business models. Before joining Cengage, Mr. Bleichmar held various roles at Altisource Technology Services, Elsevier Health Sciences, and The Boston Consulting Group. Mr. Bleichmar holds an MBA from Columbia University and a Bachelor's degree from the University of Pennsylvania.

**Alexander Broich** has been President of Cengage Global Business since 2017 and General Manager of the Company's English Language Teaching business since 2020. In these dual roles, Mr. Broich is responsible for the growth and development of the Company's Global Businesses: International Higher Education, English Language Teaching and Library & Reference. From 2019-2020 he oversaw Cengage's U.S. School Business. Mr. Broich began with Cengage as President of International in 2013. Mr. Broich brings more than 20 years of corporate and operational senior-level management experience and his strategic planning skills and familiarity with intercultural business practices and communications have contributed to a strong track record in building, growing and developing businesses in changing environments. Prior to joining Cengage, Mr. Broich served as the President of International at Pearson Clinical and Talent Assessment for five years. At Pearson, he drove the international business to double-digit growth, increased profitability, opened up new markets and led the international transformation from print to digital. Earlier in his career, Mr. Broich was the Senior Vice President of Corporate

Development at Bertelsmann, Inc. for six years where he implemented development strategies in China, England, Germany and France, among other duties. He also held management positions with Bertelsmann Online Ltd., Health Online Services Multimedica, and Bertelsmann AG. Mr. Broich holds a PhD in Business Administration from Ludwig Maximilians University in Munich.

**Kermit Cook** has served as Chief Operating Officer for Cengage since May 2020. In this role, he is responsible for leading critical, transformative functions and projects across the organization, including Corporate Strategy, Product Operations, Supply Chain and Human Resources. He is also responsible for guiding the strategy and operations of Cengage's U.S. School business. Prior to joining Cengage, Mr. Cook worked in a variety of roles globally at KKR Capstone from 2007 to 2020. Most recently, he served as Co-Head of KKR Capstone in the Americas and was a member of KKR's Portfolio Management Committees for Americas Private Equity and Special Situations. Throughout his career, Mr. Cook worked with numerous KKR portfolio companies globally, including GenesisCare, Bis Industries, Unisteel, US Foods, Education Management, Amedisys, and Cengage. Previously he worked for McKinsey & Company in Boston, and he taught high school physics in St. Louis with Teach for America. Mr. Cook holds a B.A and B.E from Dartmouth College, and an M.B.A. and M.A. Ed from Stanford University. Mr. Cook is currently a member of the Board of Trustees at the Linsly School in Wheeling, West Virginia.

**George Moore** has served as the Chief Technology Officer ("CTO") for Cengage since January 2013. In this role, he leads Cengage's global technology division, driving innovation throughout the company and creating its vision for education technology. Mr. Moore has played an instrumental role in Cengage's expansion from a legacy book publisher into an education and technology company built for learners. Mr. Moore's experience spans industries ranging from healthcare to education, with the common thread of driving business reinvention and transformation. Prior to joining Cengage, he served as CTO of Elsevier Health Science, where he transformed the world's leading medical publishing company into a medical information company. During his tenure, Mr. Moore played a central role in developing ClinicalKey, one of the most innovative and successful product introductions in the healthcare information industry. Earlier in his career, Mr. Moore served as the Senior Vice President of Product Development for Thomson Reuters Healthcare, as Vice President of Product Development at Liquent, and held roles at commercial software companies. He is a co-founder and board member of ARTiFACTS, and actively mentors emerging technology businesses and entrepreneurs. Mr. Moore serves on the Board of Directors for Junior Achievement of Northern New England and the IMS Global Learning Consortium. He studied Business Administration and Management at Northeastern University.

**Bob Munro** joined Cengage as Chief Financial Officer in April 2019. In this role he is responsible for leading all parts of the Company's finance function, including financial planning and analysis, financial reporting, accounting and control, treasury, tax, and investor relations. Prior to Cengage and since April 2015, Mr. Munro served as Chief Financial Officer of Callcredit Information Group, a credit reference agency and risk information solutions provider, which was acquired by TransUnion in June 2018. Earlier in his career, Mr. Munro served in a variety of senior management and financial roles at RELX (formerly Reed Elsevier plc), including Chief Financial Officer of Elsevier Health Sciences. His professional career started at Price Waterhouse, where he qualified as a Chartered Accountant, and is a member of the Institute of Chartered Accountants in England and Wales. Mr. Munro holds a B.Sc. degree in physics and microelectronics from the University of Essex.

**Laura Stevens** has been the Executive Vice President and General Counsel for Cengage since May 2018. In this role she is responsible for providing legal support for Cengage's business operations, corporate governance, compliance, and litigation. Ms. Stevens and her team provide legal advice, contract negotiation support, dispute management and legal operational support for Cengage's content licensing and acquisition activities. Under her leadership, the realigned Legal team has tackled longstanding challenges of the publishing industry, which enabled the launch of Cengage Unlimited and helped propel the Company's rapid print-to-digital transformation. In addition, Ms. Stevens founded the Cengage Privacy Office to promote industry-leading privacy standards for the responsible use of student data. Playing an essential role at Cengage since 2003, Ms. Stevens joined Thomson Learning, now Cengage, as Publishing Counsel before moving on to the positions of Assistant General Counsel, Intellectual Property and Senior Vice President, Deputy General Counsel before her appointment to General Counsel in 2018. Prior to joining Thomson Learning, Ms. Stevens was an attorney at Brown Raysman in New York City. Ms. Stevens holds a J.D. from Columbia Law School and a Bachelor's degree in Political Science and Art History from the University of Rochester.



## **CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**

### **PRINCIPAL STOCKHOLDERS**

As of March 31, 2021, there were four beneficial owners with more than 5.0% of Cengage common stock registered in one or more affiliated accounts: Apax Partners, L.P., KKR Asset Management, Searchlight Capital Partners and Deutsche Bank Securities Inc.

Effective March 31, 2014, we adopted an equity incentive plan (the “2014 Equity Incentive Plan”) for certain employees, officers and directors of Cengage, as approved by the Bankruptcy Court, with 4.6 million shares of common stock reserved and available for grant under equity-based awards. Between 2014 and 2017, the number of shares of common stock authorized and available for grant was increased to 7.0 million shares in accordance with the anti-dilution provisions of the 2014 Equity Incentive Plan and an approved increase for the grant of performance based awards as approved by our Board of Directors and the majority of shareholders. Effective as of November 15, 2018, the Company’s Board of Directors and the majority shareholders adopted an equity incentive plan (the “2018 Equity Incentive Plan”), increasing the aggregate number of common stock available for grant to 9.6 million shares. Following the approval of the 2018 Equity Incentive Plan, the Company does not intend to grant any additional awards under the 2014 Equity Incentive Plan.

As of March 31, 2021, there were approximately 7.5 million shares to be issued upon exercise and vesting of outstanding equity awards and approximately 0.8 million shares of common stock remaining available for future grant under the 2018 Equity Incentive Plan. The stock options outstanding as of March 31, 2021 have a weighted-average exercise price per share of \$13.83. See Note 13, “Equity-Based Compensation,” to our consolidated financial statements for additional information.

In August 2014, our shareholders approved and we adopted an equity plan authorizing an aggregate of 100,000 shares of Cengage common stock to be made available for purchase by our officers, employees and directors (the “2014 Equity Purchase Plan”). There have been no shares issued under the 2014 Equity Purchase Plan in the fiscal years succeeding March 31, 2015. As of March 31, 2021, 24,000 shares remain available for issuance under the 2014 Equity Purchase Plan.

We repurchase shares from certain employees in order to satisfy employee tax withholding requirements in connection with the vesting of restricted stock units and delivery of shares. During the fiscal years ended March 31, 2021 and 2020 we spent \$0.7 million and \$2.0 million, respectively, to acquire shares in connection with net settlement of equity-based awards. As of March 31, 2021, there were approximately 62 million shares of Cengage common stock issued and outstanding.

## CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.

### PRINCIPAL ACCOUNTANT'S FEES AND SERVICES

The table below provides a summary of the aggregate fees for professional services rendered to us by our auditors, PricewaterhouseCoopers LLP, for the following periods:

<i>(in millions)</i>	<b>Fiscal Year Ended March 31,</b>	
	<b>2021</b>	<b>2020</b>
Audit fees	\$ 2.2	\$ 2.5
Tax fees	0.3	0.2
All Other fees	—	0.6
Total	<u>\$ 2.5</u>	<u>\$ 3.3</u>

**Audit Fees** were for professional services necessary to perform an audit of the Company's annual financial statements, review of the quarterly reports, statutory and subsidiary audits and other services required to be performed by our independent auditors.

**Tax Fees** were for tax compliance, tax planning, and tax advice. Corporate tax services encompass a variety of permissible services, including technical tax advice related to United States and international tax matters; assistance with foreign income and withholding tax matters, assistance with sales tax, value added tax and equivalent tax related matters in local jurisdictions; preparation of reports to comply with local tax authority transfer pricing documentation requirements; and assistance with tax audits.

**All Other Fees** primarily consisted of due diligence and other permissible merger-related services.

It is the policy of the Audit Committee to review in advance, and grant any appropriate pre-approvals of all auditing services to be provided by the independent registered public accounting firm and all non-audit services to be provided by the independent registered public accounting firm, and in connection therewith, to approve all fees and other terms of engagement. For the fiscal years ended March 31, 2021 and 2020, the Audit Committee approved all fees billed by PricewaterhouseCoopers LLP prior to the engagement.

# CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.

## SELECTED QUARTERLY FINANCIAL DATA (Unaudited)

Our revenues, operating profit and operating cash flows are impacted by the inherent seasonality of the academic calendar. This seasonality affects our working capital requirements and hence our overall financing needs. For example, our fiscal year ends March 31 and we typically incur a net cash deficit from all of our activities in the first quarter. In addition, changes in our customers' ordering patterns may impact the comparison of our results in a quarter with the same quarter of the previous year, or in a fiscal year with the prior fiscal year, where our customers may shift the timing of material orders for a number of reasons, including, but not limited to, changes in academic semester start dates or changes in inventory management practices.

As we migrate our product and service offerings towards hosted digital solutions that are delivered over a period of time, more of our revenues will be recognized ratably over the applicable subscription period, with billings in excess of revenues recognized reflected as deferred revenue. This represents a change from traditional print products where revenues are typically recognized upon shipment of the materials to our customers. Consequently, reported revenues may not be comparable to prior periods as a growing proportion of our revenues are recognized in subsequent periods.

We pushed back our adoption of the U.S. Accounting Standard, "Revenue from Contracts with Customers: Topic 606" ("ASC 606") from April 1, 2019, as disclosed in the FY20 Annual Report, to April 1, 2018, using the modified retrospective approach. As a result, all periods presented are under ASC 606 and the change in the adoption timing did not have any impact to revenue. As allowed under ASC 606, we adopted the practical expedient to immediately expense commission on contracts with durations of twelve months or less. The net impact of the cumulative adjustment to capitalize previously expensed commission costs and the adoption of the practical expedient, did not require an adjustment to accumulated deficit. Refer to Note 1, "Summary of Significant Accounting Policies," and Note 3, "Revenue Recognition," to our consolidated financial statements for additional details.

The following tables present certain unaudited consolidated quarterly financial information for each of the fiscal quarters during the fiscal years ended March 31, 2021 and 2020, which have been revised as further described in Note 21, "Revision of Prior Period Financial Statements," to our consolidated financial statements. Such information has been prepared on the same basis as the Company's consolidated financial statements and includes all adjustments necessary to state fairly the information for the periods presented. All reported quarterly results during the fiscal year ended March 31, 2021 and 2020 are under ASC 606.

	Fiscal Year 2021			
<i>(in millions)</i>	1st Quarter	2nd Quarter	3rd Quarter	4th Quarter
Revenues	\$ 238.0	\$ 376.8	\$ 308.6	\$ 314.3
Gross profit <sup>(1)</sup>	87.5	177.9	143.8	148.7
Net (loss) income	(63.3)	18.2	(26.0)	(39.0)

	Fiscal Year 2020			
<i>(in millions)</i>	1st Quarter	2nd Quarter	3rd Quarter	4th Quarter
Revenues	\$ 287.3	\$ 409.7	\$ 313.9	\$ 316.1
Gross profit <sup>(2)</sup>	107.1	185.1	132.1	156.6
Net (loss) income	(61.9)	10.1	(65.5)	(791.6)

<sup>(1)</sup> Gross profit (defined as net revenues less cost of sales, depreciation and amortization) includes depreciation of \$12.2 million, \$11.7 million, \$11.7 million and \$11.7 million for the quarters ended June 30, 2020, September 30, 2020, December 31, 2020 and March 31, 2021, respectively.

<sup>(2)</sup> Gross profit (defined as net revenues less cost of sales, depreciation and amortization) includes depreciation of \$13.2 million, \$13.1 million, \$13.2 million and \$13.1 million for the quarters ended June 30, 2019, September 30, 2019, December 31, 2019 and March 31, 2020, respectively.

# CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.

The following tables present the effect of the revisions, as further described in Note 21, “Revision of Prior Period Financial Statements,” to our consolidated financial statements, to our unaudited condensed consolidated statements of operations for the three-months ended June 30, 2020, September 30, 2020, and December 31, 2020.

## June 30, 2020

<i>(in millions)</i>	<b>As Originally Reported</b>	<b>Adjustments</b>	<b>Impact of Adoptions</b>	<b>As Revised</b>
Revenues	\$ 238.2	\$ (0.2)	\$ —	\$ 238.0
Selling, general and administrative expenses	85.5	2.0	—	87.5
Total costs and expenses	259.2	2.0	—	261.2
Operating loss	(21.0)	(2.2)	—	(23.2)
Loss before taxes	(61.7)	(2.2)	—	(63.9)
Net loss	(61.1)	(2.2)	—	(63.3)

## September 30, 2020

<i>(in millions)</i>	<b>As Originally Reported</b>	<b>Adjustments</b>	<b>Impact of Adoptions</b>	<b>As Revised</b>
Revenues	\$ 380.1	\$ (3.3)	\$ —	\$ 376.8
Operational restructuring and other charges, net	(0.1)	—	0.1	—
Total costs and expenses	313.1	—	0.1	313.2
Operating income	67.0	(3.3)	(0.1)	63.6
Income before taxes	26.2	(3.3)	(0.1)	22.8
Net income	21.6	(3.3)	(0.1)	18.2

## December 31, 2020

<i>(in millions)</i>	<b>As Originally Reported</b>	<b>Adjustments</b>	<b>Impact of Adoptions</b>	<b>As Revised</b>
Revenues	\$ 301.6	\$ 7.0	\$ —	\$ 308.6
Selling, general and administrative expenses	94.1	—	0.2	94.3
Right-of-use asset lease impairment charges	—	—	6.1	6.1
Operational restructuring and other charges, net	9.3	—	(9.2)	0.1
Total costs and expenses	291.2	—	(2.9)	288.3
Operating income	10.4	7.0	2.9	20.3
Loss before taxes	(31.0)	7.0	2.9	(21.1)
Net loss	(35.9)	7.0	2.9	(26.0)

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**

The following tables present the effect of the revisions, as further described in Note 21, “Revision of Prior Period Financial Statements,” to our consolidated financial statements, to our unaudited condensed consolidated statements of operations for the three-months ended June 30, 2019, September 30, 2019, December 31, 2019 and March 31, 2020.

**June 30, 2019**

<i>(in millions)</i>	<b>As Originally Reported</b>	<b>Adjustments</b>	<b>Impact of Adoptions</b>	<b>As Revised</b>
Revenues	\$ 282.6	\$ 4.7	\$ —	\$ 287.3
Selling, general and administrative expenses	108.0	—	(0.5)	107.5
Right-of-use asset lease impairment charges	—	—	1.7	1.7
Operational restructuring and other charges, net	4.9	—	(1.4)	3.5
Total costs and expenses	323.9	—	(0.2)	323.7
Operating loss	(41.3)	4.7	0.2	(36.4)
Loss before taxes	(83.5)	4.7	0.2	(78.6)
Provision for income taxes	17.7	(1.0)	—	16.7
Net loss	(65.8)	3.7	0.2	(61.9)

**September 30, 2019**

<i>(in millions)</i>	<b>As Originally Reported</b>	<b>Adjustments</b>	<b>Impact of Adoptions</b>	<b>As Revised</b>
Revenues	\$ 410.4	\$ (0.7)	\$ —	\$ 409.7
Cost of revenues	172.7	0.1	—	172.8
Total cost of revenues	211.4	0.1	—	211.5
Selling, general and administrative expenses	95.6	0.3	0.7	96.6
Operational restructuring and other charges, net	1.7	—	0.1	1.8
Total costs and expenses	357.5	0.4	0.8	358.7
Operating income	52.9	(1.1)	(0.8)	51.0
Income before taxes	9.8	(1.1)	(0.8)	7.9
Provision for income taxes	1.7	0.5	—	2.2
Net income	11.5	(0.6)	(0.8)	10.1

**December 31, 2019**

<i>(in millions)</i>	<b>As Originally Reported</b>	<b>Adjustments</b>	<b>Impact of Adoptions</b>	<b>As Revised</b>
Revenues	\$ 308.7	\$ 5.2	\$ —	\$ 313.9
Cost of revenues	140.4	(0.1)	—	140.3
Total cost of revenues	168.7	(0.1)	—	168.6
Selling, general and administrative expenses	102.5	(0.9)	(0.4)	101.2
Right-of-use asset lease impairment charges	—	—	0.8	0.8
Operational restructuring and other charges, net	15.8	—	(1.0)	14.8
Total costs and expenses	333.3	(1.0)	(0.6)	331.7
Operating loss	(24.6)	6.2	0.6	(17.8)
Loss before taxes	(67.5)	6.2	0.6	(60.7)
Provision for income taxes	—	(4.8)	—	(4.8)
Net loss	(67.5)	1.4	0.6	(65.5)

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**

**March 31, 2020**

<i>(in millions)</i>	<b>As Originally Reported</b>	<b>Adjustments</b>	<b>Impact of Adoptions</b>	<b>As Revised</b>
Revenues	\$ 313.3	\$ 2.8	\$ —	\$ 316.1
Cost of revenues	132.8	1.5	—	134.3
Total cost of revenues	144.9	1.5	—	146.4
Selling, general and administrative expenses	83.5	(2.0)	0.3	81.8
Right-of-use asset lease impairment charges	—	—	0.2	0.2
Total costs and expenses	1,042.9	(0.5)	0.5	1,042.9
Operating loss	(729.6)	3.3	(0.5)	(726.8)
Loss before taxes	(768.5)	3.3	(0.5)	(765.7)
Provision for income taxes	(26.9)	1.0	—	(25.9)
Net loss	(795.4)	4.3	(0.5)	(791.6)

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Management's Discussion and Analysis of**  
**Financial Condition and Results of Operations**

**MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS OF FINANCIAL CONDITION AND RESULTS OF OPERATIONS**

*The following contains management's discussion and analysis of our financial condition and results of operations ("MD&A") and should be read in conjunction with our consolidated financial statements and the related notes thereto included elsewhere in this report. Certain historical amounts have been revised for the correction of previously disclosed immaterial errors. For further information on revisions to previously reported consolidated financial statements, see Note 21, "Revision of Prior Period Financial Statements," to our consolidated financial statements. This discussion contains forward-looking statements and involves numerous risks and uncertainties, including, but not limited to, those described in the "Special note regarding forward-looking statements" and "Risk Factors" sections of this report. Actual results may differ materially from those contained in any forward-looking statements.*

**Overview**

Cengage Learning Holdings II, Inc. ("CL Holdings II, Inc."), together with its consolidated subsidiaries, is hereinafter collectively referred to as "Cengage," the "Company," "us," "we" and "our."

We are a leading global education and technology company, built for the modern world, that delivers products and services for millions of students, enabling attainment of high-quality education and critical skills needed in today's highly competitive work force. Built on a strong foundation of over 100 years of trusted content, repeatable customer relationships, and state of the art digital platforms, we are uniquely positioned to lead the growing E4E revolution. For a full description of our industry, products, services and organizational structure, see "Description of Business."

The ongoing impact of COVID-19 on our operational and financial performance will depend on future developments, including the duration of the outbreak, efficacy of vaccinations, vaccination rates, impact on our customers and our sales cycle, and impact on our partners or employees, all of which remain uncertain, particularly in certain international markets, and predominantly beyond our knowledge or control. As of March 31, 2021, the COVID-19 impact on our consolidated results of operations was modest and we ended the year in a strong liquidity position. During the fourth quarter of fiscal year 2021 we recorded a goodwill impairment charge of \$9.7 million in our North America reporting unit, within our previously reported International segment, primarily due to the adverse impact of COVID-19 on the U.S. ELT business. See Note 1, "Basis of Presentation and Summary of Significant Accounting Policies," to our consolidated financial statements for further details on COVID-19 and see Note 7, "Goodwill," to our consolidated financial statements for further details on impairment reviews.

As discussed in our Annual Report for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2020, we entered fiscal year 2021 anticipating the potential for high-double-digit enrollment declines and similar revenue declines across other markets and channels. In response, we enacted several early actions to ensure sufficient liquidity and to preserve the operational capability, capacity and flexibility, to respond effectively to evolving customer needs and opportunities. Fortunately, the enrollment declines, particularly in the U.S. Higher Education market, were not as significant as anticipated and we were able to reverse some of the wide-ranging employee actions, including payback of temporary reductions to remuneration, while still increasing our liquidity position from March 31, 2020. Other actions, including those across the whole scope of our supply chain, reassessment to spend funds against customer priorities and leveraging government programs, where available, continue to be a focus as we continue to evolve the business.

We continue to see opportunities to accelerate the transition to digital in support of our customers and, beyond that, for retraining or reskilling in response to increased unemployment. We plan to take advantage of these two tailwinds with our digital solutions and other products and services.

The accompanying Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations gives effect to the revision of our previously reported consolidated financial statements for the fiscal years ended March 31, 2020 and 2019. See Note 21, "Revision of Prior Period Financial Statements," to our consolidated financial statements. In addition, we revised our unaudited consolidated quarterly financial information for each of the fiscal quarters during the fiscal years ended March 31, 2021 and 2020. See "Selected Quarterly Financial Data" for additional details.

Effective in the first quarter of fiscal year 2019, we adopted the U.S. Accounting Standard, "Revenue from Contracts with Customers: Topic 606" ("ASC 606") using the modified retrospective approach, which requires the results for the current reporting periods be presented under ASC 606. The adoption of ASC 606 did not have an impact to revenue. As allowed under ASC 606, we adopted the practical expedient to immediately expense commissions on contracts with durations of twelve months or less. The net impact of the cumulative adjustment to capitalize previously expensed commission costs

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Management's Discussion and Analysis of**  
**Financial Condition and Results of Operations**

and the adoption of the practical expedient, did not require an adjustment to accumulated deficit. Refer to "Application of Critical Accounting Policies and Estimates," and Note 3, "Revenue Recognition," to our consolidated financial statements for additional details.

During the fourth quarter of fiscal year 2021, we changed our segment reporting structure to better align with the strategic objectives of the Company, which were driven because of changes to the information reviewed by our chief operating decision maker. Our previous reportable segments, Learning, International and Gale have been recast to conform to the current presentation. Following this change, we are organized into six reportable segments on the basis of products and customers provided by each segment, identified as follows:

*U.S. Higher Education*—in the United States, we produce a variety of digital and print educational solutions and associated services for the higher education markets.

*International Higher Education* - provides learning materials and digital solutions to post-secondary markets outside the United States.

*Secondary Education*—provides learning platforms and content to prepare 8th-12th grade students to be successful post-high school – whether continuing their education into traditional post-secondary, degree conferring options or pursuing skills or vocational training.

*Workforce Skills*—provides post-secondary and Continuing Education online courses for students to upskill and reskill outside the traditional U.S. Higher Education degree conferring path.

*English Language Teaching*—Operating under the National Geographic Learning brand, provides a full range of English language curriculum and digital solutions to pre-k, primary, secondary and general & academic English markets, globally.

*Research*—we offer research platforms around the world which provide access to our original content, collections of primary source materials and aggregated periodicals to learners at libraries, colleges, universities, schools and businesses.

The segments represent components of the Company for which separate financial information is available that is utilized on a regular basis by the chief operating decision maker in evaluating performance and determining how to allocate resources.

Throughout the MD&A, our discussion of revenues may include "core digital product sales" which represents net sales of digital standalone products, as well as bundled print and digital products. Net sales represents gross sales less actual returns of products.

Management reviews segment performance on a constant currency basis, which removes the impact of changes in foreign currency exchange rates by converting current period and prior period amounts from local currency to U.S. dollars using standard internal currency exchange rates held constant for each year. This allows us to evaluate underlying current operating performance in comparison to past operating performance. As needed, we recast segment information for the prior period based on our internally-derived standard currency exchange rates used for the current period in order to remove the impact of foreign currency exchange fluctuation.

To supplement our consolidated financial statements presented in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America ("U.S. GAAP"), we have presented certain non-U.S. GAAP financial measures in addition to our GAAP results. We believe that these non-U.S. GAAP financial measures provide useful information for evaluating our business performance. We believe that the presentation of Adjusted Revenues and Adjusted EBITDA is appropriate to provide additional information to investors about certain material non-cash items and about unusual items that we do not expect to continue at the same level in the future as well as other items. Further, we believe Adjusted EBITDA provides a meaningful measure of operating profitability because we use it for evaluating our business performance and understanding certain significant items. This information should be considered as supplemental in nature and should not be considered in isolation or as a substitute for the related financial information prepared in accordance with U.S. GAAP. In addition, these non-U.S. GAAP financial measures may not be the same as similarly entitled measures reported by other companies.

Our definition of Adjusted EBITDA allows us to add back certain non-cash and other charges or costs that are deducted in calculating net income from continuing operations. However, these are expenses that may recur, vary greatly and can be difficult to predict. They can represent the effect of long-term strategies as opposed to short-term results. In addition, certain of these expenses can represent the reduction of cash that could be used for other corporate purposes.



**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Management's Discussion and Analysis of**  
**Financial Condition and Results of Operations**

We present the following non-U.S. GAAP financial measures in this report:

<b>Measure</b>	<b>Definition</b>
Adjusted Revenues	This measure is defined as revenues before the impact of changes in foreign currency exchange rates.
Adjusted EBITDA	This measure is defined as net income (loss) before: (benefit from) provision for income taxes; interest expense, net; other income (expense), net, below operating income (loss); goodwill impairment charges; amortization of identifiable intangible assets; depreciation; operational restructuring and other charges, net; amortization of pre-publication costs; right-of-use asset impairment charges; merger and acquisition-related costs; non-core other operating expenses, and equity-based compensation expense. This measure also removes the impact of changes in foreign currency exchange rates on the items noted above.
Adjusted EBITDA less Pre-Publication Costs	This measure reflects Adjusted EBITDA less additions to pre-publication costs on an accrual basis, which are costs incurred prior to the publication date of a title or release date of a product and represent activities associated with product development not limited to editorial review and fact verification, graphic art design and layout and the process of conversion from print to digital media or within various formats of digital media. In addition, pre-publication costs include the cost to procure perpetual rights for the use of content which have been developed by third parties and are to be included in our products. Costs are capitalized when the title is expected to generate probable future economic benefits and are amortized upon publication of the title over its estimated operating life cycle.
Adjusted EBITDA less Capital Expenditures	This measure reflects Adjusted EBITDA less additions to pre-publication costs and property, equipment and capitalized internal-use software on an accrual basis.

See “Reconciliations of Non-U.S. GAAP Financial Measures” for reconciliations to the most directly comparable financial measures prepared in accordance with U.S. GAAP.

### **Sources of Revenues**

We offer a broad portfolio of products, including digital and print solutions. We compete primarily on the basis of price, the quality of our content and author reputation, the effectiveness of our digital solutions and customers’ familiarity with our products.

- Within the higher education market, we publish a wide variety of print products including textbooks, study guides, laboratory exercises, instructor editions and supplemental products. We publish textbooks for all major academic disciplines of two- and four-year colleges as well as major disciplines of career studies. Our higher education offerings also include a broad range of digital and print-digital hybrid products. Our product offerings to customers include technology and academic services, such as digital homework solutions and support services for use of our digital products, in response to market demand for fully integrated solutions. We distribute our products primarily through traditional campus college bookstores, institutions, online intermediaries and directly to students. We also offer Cengage Unlimited, a digital subscription service for our U.S. higher education business. Cengage Unlimited provides access to all of our digital learning platforms, eBooks, online homework and study tools as well as free print for a fixed price that can be subscribed to for one semester, one year, or two years. Starting in August 2020, eTextbook subscriptions were offered, excluding homework solutions, for Cengage Unlimited, giving students up to four print rentals, study tools and more.
- Within the secondary education market, we compete in select elective disciplines, including Advanced Placement & Electives (“AP&E”) and English Language Teaching (“ELT”). The school market is composed of state adoption sales, where states approve certain products for use in public schools statewide, and open territory sales, where individual public school districts determine which educational products to use.
- Within the workforce skills market, we create and sell textbooks, digital solutions and other related materials to students who are seeking job training, certification, or continuing skills training in the workplace and through professional training programs.
- Within the ELT market, through the stories, ideas, photography and video of National Geographic and TED – combined with Cengage’s innovative learning platforms – we create English programs that are inspiring, real and relevant. Using our English language programs, students learn about their world by experiencing it.

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Management's Discussion and Analysis of**  
**Financial Condition and Results of Operations**

- Within the research market, we operate principally under our Gale brand. We sell directly to many libraries and library consortia, and also sell via distributors. In addition to selling to libraries, we also license our content for integration within web-based information services.

### **Operating Expenses**

Our operating expenses are principally the following:

- Cost of revenues includes both fixed and variable costs directly related to publishing our digital products, textbooks and printed proprietary reference materials. This includes fixed and variable costs related to activation fees/royalties on third party technology, royalty payments to our authors, cost of paper, printing and binding, and distribution costs, all of which vary as revenues increase or decrease. Also included in cost of revenues are fixed direct and indirect costs incurred for the production, delivery, digital hosting services and customer support of our products and services such as occupancy and employee-related costs associated with editorial, product management, digital content development, customer service, technical product support and distribution. In addition, cost of revenues includes amortization of pre-publication costs, which are costs related to the development and creation of a book, reference material or other digital and print content, as well as amortization of certain technology-related and author content right identifiable intangible assets;
- Selling, general and administrative expenses include salaries of our sales, marketing and administrative personnel, equity-based compensation expense, marketing and advertising expenses and other costs of operating our business which typically do not vary as revenues increase or decrease. Also classified within selling, general, and administrative expense are other technology costs, which are increasing as our digital transformation continues and we continue to invest in technology;
- Merger-related costs included integration planning costs, legal fees, rating agency fees, and professional services and pertained to the proposed McGraw-Hill merger that was terminated on May 3, 2020;
- Acquisition-related costs include legal fees and technology integration costs associated with the acquisition of certain Nelson Canada assets;
- Operational restructuring and other charges includes costs associated with exit or disposal activities, including lease termination costs and certain employee severance costs associated with approved restructuring plans, facility closures or other similar activities, knowledge transfer costs, and business process reengineering consulting costs that are directly related to the restructuring initiatives; and
- Depreciation and amortization represents the depreciation of our property, equipment and capitalized internal-use software as well as the amortization of our identifiable intangible assets.

### **Seasonality and Comparability**

Our revenues, operating profit and operating cash flows are impacted by the inherent seasonality of the academic calendar. This seasonality affects our working capital requirements and hence our overall financing needs. For example, our fiscal year ends March 31 and we typically incur a net cash deficit from all of our activities in the first quarter. In addition, changes in our customers' ordering patterns may impact the comparison of our results in a quarter with the same quarter of the previous year, or in a fiscal year with the prior fiscal year, where our customers may shift the timing of material orders for a number of reasons, including, but not limited to, changes in academic semester start dates, changes in inventory management practices, and a shift in customer base driven by an increase in direct-to-student subscription products or to institutional sales models. Moreover, remaining uncertainty resulting from the COVID-19 pandemic may result in fiscal year 2022 not following historic patterns.

As we continue to migrate our service offerings towards hosted digital solutions that are delivered over a period of time, the associated revenues will be recognized ratably over the applicable subscription period, with amounts billed in excess of revenues recognized reflected as deferred revenue. Deferred revenue represents amounts billed in advance from our customers that will be recognized as revenue in subsequent periods as products and services are delivered to customers. See Note 3, "Revenue Recognition," to our consolidated financial statements for additional information.

### **Dividends**

There were no dividends declared in the fiscal years ended March 31, 2021 and 2020.

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Management's Discussion and Analysis of**  
**Financial Condition and Results of Operations**

**Operational Restructuring, Other Charges and Right-of-Use Asset Impairments**

***Operational Restructuring and Other Charges***

***Fiscal Year 2021***

During the fiscal year ended March 31, 2021, in connection with continued cost structure improvements and the traditional office structure and remote work evaluation of our real estate portfolio we:

- incurred \$6.4 million of severance related costs;
- incurred process reengineering consulting costs of \$1.0 million and these charges were expensed as incurred; and
- incurred \$1.1 million of facility exit costs associated with the traditional office structure and remote work evaluation of the Company's real estate portfolio and these charges were expensed as incurred.

***Fiscal Year 2020***

During the fiscal year ended March 31, 2020, we announced several restructuring cost savings initiatives that were designed to streamline operations and improve our cost structure. These initiatives remain unchanged and included actions across our segments and corporate functions, such as streamlining our organizational structure and spending at the functional, business and geographic levels. As a result of these actions in fiscal year 2020 we:

- incurred \$18.4 million of severance related costs;
- incurred \$1.3 million of process reengineering consulting costs that were expensed as incurred;
- recorded facility exit charges of \$1.3 million associated with vacating and ceasing-use of certain office space and these charges were expenses as incurred.

***Fiscal Year 2019***

During the fiscal year ended March 31, 2019, we initiated several restructuring cost savings initiatives across our segments to align our operations to support the evolution of its changing business model, including Cengage Unlimited and its customer-focused approach and to position the business for growth. These initiatives also included the restructuring of certain facilities. As a result of these actions in fiscal year 2019 we:

- incurred \$17.1 million of severance related costs;
- incurred \$0.6 million of process reengineering consulting costs that were expensed as incurred;
- prior to the adoption of ASC 842, vacated and ceased use of one of our offices and recorded restructuring charges of \$0.2 million, representing the relative portion of remaining future lease payments, net of estimated sublease income, along with other exit costs related to the facility closure, and net of a \$5.0 million non-cash write-off of the related deferred rent and landlord inducement liability; and
- prior to the adoption of ASC 842, adjusted our estimated cease use liability on two previously vacated floors and recorded a net \$0.4 million increase in future estimated sublease income.

***Right-of-Use Asset Impairments***

During the fiscal years ended March 31, 2021 and 2020, we vacated and ceased use of multiple properties and recorded impairment charges totaling \$7.7 million and \$2.7 million, respectively.

See Note 9, "Operational Restructuring, Other Charges and Right-of-Use Asset Impairments," to our consolidated financial statements for additional details.

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Management's Discussion and Analysis of**  
**Financial Condition and Results of Operations**

**Acquisitions**

From time to time, we may complete acquisitions that are complementary to our business initiatives and represent a strategic fit with the vision of our Company.

On July 7, 2020, we agreed with Nelson Education Ltd. ("Nelson"), our longtime partner in Canada, to terminate Nelson's exclusive distribution rights for our academic product into the Canadian market and to acquire certain assets and assumed liabilities related to Nelson's Canadian adaptations of our titles. The total purchase consideration was \$8.8 million, consisting of \$5.3 million and \$3.5 million of non-cash and cash considerations, respectively. The transaction included \$3.5 million of goodwill and \$4.8 million of identifiable intangible assets with a weighted average useful life of 5 years. See Note 2, "Acquisition," to our consolidated financial statements for additional information.

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Management's Discussion and Analysis of**  
**Financial Condition and Results of Operations**

**Financial Performance**

**Consolidated Results of Operations**

*Fiscal Year Ended March 31, 2021 Compared with Fiscal Year Ended March 31, 2020*

<i>(in millions)</i>	Fiscal Year Ended March 31,		Change	
	2021	2020	\$	%
Revenues	\$ 1,237.7	\$ 1,327.0	\$ (89.3)	(6.7)%
Cost of revenues, excluding amortization of pre-publication costs and identifiable intangible assets and depreciation stated below	537.9	589.5	(51.6)	(8.8)%
Amortization of pre-publication costs	89.1	99.1	(10.0)	(10.1)%
Amortization of identifiable intangible assets	5.5	4.9	0.6	12.2 %
Total cost of revenues, excluding depreciation stated below	632.5	693.5	(61.0)	(8.8)%
Selling, general and administrative expenses, excluding depreciation stated below	376.1	387.1	(11.0)	(2.8)%
Merger and acquisition-related costs	2.5	44.1	(41.6)	(94.3)%
Right-of-use asset impairment charges	7.7	2.7	5.0	NM
Operational restructuring and other charges, net	8.5	21.0	(12.5)	(59.5)%
Depreciation	59.5	64.2	(4.7)	(7.3)%
Amortization of identifiable intangible assets	77.5	76.6	0.9	1.2 %
Goodwill impairment charges	9.7	767.8	(758.1)	(98.7)%
Other income, net	(0.7)	—	(0.7)	NM
Total costs and expenses	1,173.3	2,057.0	(883.7)	(43.0)%
Operating income (loss)	64.4	(730.0)	794.4	(108.8)%
Other (expense) income, net	(6.8)	3.0	(9.8)	NM
Interest income	0.8	4.5	(3.7)	(82.2)%
Interest expense	(156.0)	(174.6)	18.6	(10.7)%
Loss before taxes	(97.6)	(897.1)	799.5	(89.1)%
Provision for income taxes	(12.5)	(11.8)	(0.7)	5.9 %
Net loss	\$ (110.1)	\$ (908.9)	\$ 798.8	(87.9)%
Adjusted Revenues <sup>(1)(2)</sup>	\$ 1,222.7	\$ 1,310.3	\$ (87.6)	(6.7)%
Adjusted EBITDA <sup>(1)(2)</sup>	\$ 330.0	\$ 353.9	\$ (23.9)	(6.8)%
Adjusted EBITDA less Pre-Publication Costs <sup>(1)(2)</sup>	\$ 258.5	\$ 275.8	\$ (17.3)	(6.3)%
Adjusted EBITDA less Capital Expenditures <sup>(1)(2)</sup>	\$ 220.9	\$ 215.2	\$ 5.7	2.6 %

<sup>(1)</sup> See “Overview” for the definition of this non-U.S. GAAP financial measure,

<sup>(2)</sup> “Segment Operating Results” for discussion and “Reconciliations of Non-U.S. GAAP Financial Measures” for reconciliations to the most directly comparable financial measures prepared in accordance with U.S. GAAP.

<sup>(2)</sup> Prior year amounts have been recast to current year standard internal currency exchange rates.

NM = Not meaningful

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Management's Discussion and Analysis of**  
**Financial Condition and Results of Operations**

**Revenues**

**Revenues** for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2021 decreased by \$89.3 million, or 6.7%, to \$1,237.7 million. The challenges as a result of COVID-19 continued as the markets are just beginning to stabilize and recover at a varied pace. The pace of the recovery will vary by business and geography. The following provides consolidated revenue results:

- U.S. Higher Education increased \$6.0 million primarily related to continued digital sales growth driven by the performance of Cengage Unlimited, eBooks, and courseware;
- International Higher Education decreased \$36.3 million primarily due to the impact of the COVID-19 pandemic containment measures and restrictions;
- Secondary Education decreased \$26.2 million primarily driven by a weakness in the school channel attributable to COVID-19 related school budget constraints and lower adoption performance;
- Workforce Skills increased \$11.6 million primarily driven by the workforce challenges created by the COVID-19 pandemic that increased demand for online career training courses to upskill and reskill;
- ELT decreased \$30.4 million primarily related to shortfalls across all regions resulting from the closure of institutions due to the COVID-19 pandemic; and
- Research decreased \$12.8 million primarily driven by a decrease in print sales in the United States related to customer budget constraints due to the COVID-19 pandemic, which negatively impacted direct and wholesale orders.

See the "Segment Operating Results" below for additional details on each Segment's Adjusted Revenue and Adjusted EBITDA less Pre-Publication performance.

**Operating Costs and Expenses**

**Cost of Revenues**

**Total cost of revenues, excluding amortization of prepublication costs, amortization of intangible assets and depreciation** decreased \$51.6 million, or 8.8%, primarily related to the decline in revenues resulting mainly from the COVID-19 pandemic containment measures and restrictions which resulted in the closure of institutions and schools and a shift to an increase in higher margin digital sales, which resulted in the following factors:

- revenue declines contributed to a \$27.4 million decrease in paper, print and binding costs;
- product mix and revenue declines contributed to a \$14.3 million decrease of royalty expense;
- a \$2.6 million decrease in distribution related expenses;
- a \$14.6 million reduction, net of employee compensation and related costs primarily attributable to the fiscal year 2020 restructuring cost savings initiative; a reduction in headcount; and an increase in annual incentive costs;
- a \$7.0 million decrease related to reduced travel resulting from the COVID-19 pandemic; partially offset by
- an increase of \$11.6 million in inventory obsolescence expense primarily related to products nearing the end of their life cycle;
- a \$1.7 million increase in software hosting services; and
- a \$1.0 million increase in technology infrastructure maintenance.

**Amortization of prepublication costs** decreased \$10.0 million, or 10.1%, primarily related to certain assets becoming fully amortized and a decrease in prepublication spend costs.

**Amortization of intangible assets** increased \$0.6 million, or 12.2%, primarily attributable to a \$0.2 million increase related to fiscal years 2021 and 2020 timing of the acquisition of certain author content rights and a \$0.5 million increase related to the prior year non-monetary exchange of an existing identifiable technology and trademark for a perpetual license of the same technology. These increases were partially offset by a decrease of \$0.2 million decrease related to a technology asset becoming fully amortized.

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Management's Discussion and Analysis of**  
**Financial Condition and Results of Operations**

**Operating Expenses**

***Selling, general and administrative expenses, excluding depreciation*** decreased \$11.0 million, or 2.8%, to \$376.1 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2021, primarily due to the following:

- a decrease of \$32.5 million related to reduced travel, trade shows, events and marketing resulting from the COVID-19 pandemic restrictions;
- a \$4.0 million reduction of real estate and occupancy expense related to vacated office space and temporary office closures during the COVID-19 pandemic; partially offset by
- a \$9.4 million increase, net of employee compensation and related costs primarily attributable to an increase in annual incentive costs; and the fiscal year 2020 restructuring cost saving initiative;
- an \$9.1 million increase in professional services expenses;
- an increase of \$2.1 million in third party commissions;
- a \$1.5 million increase in equity-based compensation expenses substantially due to an equity plan modification; refer to Note 13, "Equity-Based Compensation," to our consolidated financial statements for additional details on these charges;
- a \$1.3 million increase in credit card transaction fees related to direct to customer sales; and
- the comparison to a \$2.7 million write off of deferred rent as a result of a lease buyout of the vacated San Francisco office in the prior year.

***Merger and acquisition-related costs*** for the fiscal years ended March 31, 2021 and 2020, were \$2.5 million and \$44.1 million, respectively. In fiscal year 2021, charges of \$1.2 million were related to legal fees and technology integration costs associated with the acquisition of certain Nelson Canada assets. In the fiscal years 2021 and 2020, charges of \$1.3 million and \$44.1 million, respectively, were associated with the proposed merger with McGraw-Hill Education, Inc. that was terminated on May 3, 2020.

***Right-of-use asset impairment charges*** for the fiscal years ended March 31, 2021 and 2020, were \$7.7 million and \$2.7 million, respectively. Refer to Note 9, "Operational Restructuring, Other Charges and Right-of-Use Asset Impairments," to our consolidated financial statements for additional details on these charges.

***Operational restructuring, and other charges, net*** decreased \$12.5 million to \$8.5 million in the fiscal year ended March 31, 2021. The \$8.5 million charges, net, in fiscal year 2021 includes \$6.4 million of severance related costs, \$1.0 million of process reengineering consulting costs, and \$1.1 million of facility exit costs. Charges in the prior period of \$21.0 million include \$18.4 million related to severance related costs, \$1.3 million of process reengineering consulting costs, and \$1.3 million of facility exit costs. Refer to Note 9, "Operational Restructuring, Other Charges and Right-of-Use Asset Impairments," to our consolidated financial statements for additional details on these charges.

***Depreciation*** decreased \$4.7 million, or 7.3%, during the fiscal year ended March 31, 2021, primarily related to certain assets becoming fully depreciated, partially offset by an increase related to certain assets being placed in service and the acceleration of assets affiliated with vacated space within several of our office locations.

***Amortization of identifiable intangible assets*** increased \$0.9 million, or 1.2%, for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2021. An increase of \$1.0 million is directly attributable to acquisition-related assets, see Note 2, "Acquisition," to our consolidated financial statements for additional details.

***Goodwill impairment charges*** of \$9.7 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2021 related to our North America reporting unit and primarily due to our previously reported International reportable segment, which was significantly impacted by the COVID-19 pandemic. Refer to Note 7, "Goodwill," to our consolidated financial statements for additional details on these charges.

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Management's Discussion and Analysis of**  
**Financial Condition and Results of Operations**

**Non-Operating Items**

*Other (expense) income, net* for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2021 was expense of \$6.8 million primarily related to foreign currency transaction losses, partially offset by a gain on the sale of an equity investment. The same prior year period income of \$3.0 million primarily related to foreign currency transaction gains.

*Interest expense* decreased \$18.6 million, or 10.7%, to \$156.0 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2021, primarily due to an \$18.9 million decrease in Term Loan interest driven by a decline in the London Interbank Offered Rate ("LIBOR"), which is mainly attributable to actions taken by central banks around the world in response to the economic crisis related to the COVID-19 pandemic. The decrease was partially offset by a \$0.5 million increase in interest expense related to outstanding borrowings under the ABL Facility.

**Income Tax**

*Provision for income taxes* was \$12.5 million and \$11.8 million for the fiscal years ended March 31, 2021 and 2020, respectively. The current year provision for income taxes is primarily attributable to current tax expense in non-U.S. jurisdictions and an increase in deferred tax expense due to the U.S. valuation allowance being applied to the full year. The increase in expense compared to the same prior period is primarily related to the increase in the U.S. valuation allowance, partially offset by a decrease in tax in non-U.S. jurisdictions.



**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Management's Discussion and Analysis of**  
**Financial Condition and Results of Operations**

*Fiscal Year Ended March 31, 2020 Compared with Fiscal Year Ended March 31, 2019*

(in millions)	Fiscal Year Ended March 31,		Change	
	2020	2019	\$	%
Revenues	\$ 1,327.0	\$ 1,430.6	\$ (103.6)	(7.2)%
Cost of revenues, excluding amortization of pre-publication costs and identifiable intangible assets and depreciation stated below	589.5	642.6	(53.1)	(8.3)%
Amortization of pre-publication costs	99.1	109.9	(10.8)	(9.8)%
Amortization of identifiable intangible assets	4.9	4.8	0.1	2.1 %
Total cost of revenues, excluding depreciation stated below	693.5	757.3	(63.8)	(8.4)%
Selling, general and administrative expenses, excluding depreciation stated below	387.1	452.9	(65.8)	(14.5)%
Merger and acquisition-related costs	44.1	6.8	37.3	NM
Right-of-use asset impairment charges	2.7	—	2.7	NM
Operational restructuring and other charges, net	21.0	17.5	3.5	20.0 %
Depreciation	64.2	76.2	(12.0)	(15.7)%
Amortization of identifiable intangible assets	76.6	90.1	(13.5)	(15.0)%
Goodwill impairment charges	767.8	—	767.8	NM
Total costs and expenses	2,057.0	1,400.8	656.2	46.8 %
Operating income	(730.0)	29.8	(759.8)	NM
Other income, net	3.0	2.3	0.7	30.4 %
Interest income	4.5	5.6	(1.1)	(19.6)%
Interest expense	(174.6)	(177.5)	2.9	(1.6)%
Loss before taxes	(897.1)	(139.8)	(757.3)	NM
(Provision for) benefit from income taxes	(11.8)	31.3	(43.1)	(137.7)%
Net loss	\$ (908.9)	\$ (108.5)	\$ (800.4)	NM
Adjusted Revenues <sup>(1)(2)</sup>	\$ 1,310.3	\$ 1,403.4	\$ (93.1)	(6.6)%
Adjusted EBITDA <sup>(1)(2)</sup>	\$ 353.9	\$ 345.2	\$ 8.7	2.5 %
Adjusted EBITDA less Pre-Publication Costs <sup>(1)(2)</sup>	\$ 275.8	\$ 251.3	\$ 24.5	9.7 %
Adjusted EBITDA less Capital Expenditures <sup>(1)(2)</sup>	\$ 215.2	\$ 193.0	\$ 22.2	11.5 %

(1) See “Overview” for the definition of this non-U.S. GAAP financial measure, “Segment Operating Results” for discussion and “Reconciliations of Non-U.S. GAAP Financial Measures” for reconciliations to the most directly comparable financial measures prepared in accordance with U.S. GAAP.

(2) Prior year amounts have been recast to current year standard internal currency exchange rates.

NM = Not meaningful

## Revenues

**Revenues** for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2020 decreased \$103.6 million, or 7.2%, to \$1,327.0 million. In the fourth quarter, the COVID-19 pandemic resulted in the closure of schools and universities, contributing a \$24.7 million negative impact to our revenues. The following provides consolidated revenue results:

- U.S. Higher Education decreased \$63.0 million primarily driven by two industry headwinds: declining enrollments and affordability-driven price compression;
- International Higher Education decreased \$1.3 million primarily due to the comparison to a prior year print export deal of Australian school products;

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Management's Discussion and Analysis of**  
**Financial Condition and Results of Operations**

- Secondary Education decreased \$11.6 million primarily related to a decline in sales of Advanced Placement and Electives (“AP&E”) and Career Technical Educations (“CTE”) programs
- Workforce Skills increased \$2.8 million primarily related to the increased demand for online career training courses to upskill and reskill;
- ELT increased \$5.4 million primarily related to an increase in Asia;
- Research decreased \$26.9 million primarily related to the impact of the COVID-19 pandemic that resulted in the closure of schools and universities; and a decrease of sales in the United States mostly attributable to eBook sales in the higher education and school channels;
- there was a \$10.5 million decrease in revenue due to adverse foreign exchange fluctuations; partially offset by
- Corporate Enabling Functions increased \$1.5 million due to revenue earned from our warehouse for third-party distribution services.

See the “Segment Operating Results” below for additional details on each Segment’s Adjusted Revenue and Adjusted EBITDA less Pre-Publication performance.

**Operating Costs and Expenses**

**Cost of Revenues**

***Total cost of revenues, excluding amortization of prepublication costs, amortization of intangible assets and depreciation*** decreased \$53.1 million, or 8.3%, primarily due to the following:

- a \$23.0 million decrease in royalty expense driven by lower sales and movement in reserves for anticipated returns;
- an \$8.4 million decrease in outside service fees;
- a \$7.7 million decrease in paper, print and binding costs attributable to the decline in print sales;
- a \$3.3 million decrease in distribution related expenses;
- a reduction in employee compensation and related costs, of which, \$9.0 million is related to the fiscal year 2020 restructuring costs savings initiative and \$5.8 million is related to the completion of fiscal year 2019 strategic initiatives and a reduction in headcount; partially offset by
- a \$3.2 million increase in technology infrastructure maintenance; and
- a \$2.8 million increase in software hosting services.

***Amortization of prepublication costs*** decreased \$10.8 million, or 9.8%, primarily related to the continued decrease in prepublication spend, partially offset by certain assets being placed in service.

***Amortization of intangible assets*** was \$4.9 million and \$4.8 million for the fiscal years ended March 31, 2020 and 2019, respectively.

**Operating Expenses**

***Selling, general and administrative expenses, excluding depreciation*** decreased \$65.8 million, or 14.5%, to \$387.1 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2020, primarily due to the following:

- a reduction in employee compensation and related costs, of which, \$9.6 million was related to the fiscal year 2020 restructuring costs savings initiative and \$35.6 million is related to the completion of fiscal year 2019 strategic initiatives and a reduction in headcount;
- a \$6.0 million decrease in sales and marketing expenses;
- a \$3.0 million decrease in equity-based compensation expenses substantially due to certain equity awards becoming fully vested in the prior year;
- a \$2.3 million decrease in outside service fees;
- a \$2.7 million decrease related to the write off of deferred rent as a result of the lease buyout of the vacated San Francisco office;

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Management's Discussion and Analysis of**  
**Financial Condition and Results of Operations**

- a \$1.2 million decrease in rent expense related to final lease payments on vacated offices; and
- a \$4.4 million decrease in rent expense related to vacated office space.

**Merger and acquisition-related costs** for the fiscal years ended March 31, 2020 and 2019, were \$44.1 million and \$6.8 million, respectively. These costs were associated with the proposed McGraw-Hill merger that was terminated on May 3, 2020, and included integration planning costs, legal fees, rating agency fees and professional services costs.

**Right-of-use asset impairment charges** for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2020 were \$2.7 million. Refer to Note 9, "Operational Restructuring, Other Charges and Right-of-Use Asset Impairments," to our consolidated financial statements for additional details on these charges.

**Operational restructuring and other charges, net** increased \$3.5 million to \$21.0 million in the fiscal year ended March 31, 2020. The \$21.0 million charges, net, in 2020 included \$18.4 million of severance related costs, \$1.3 million of process reengineering consulting fees, and \$1.3 million facility exit costs. Charges in the prior period of \$17.5 million included \$17.1 million related to severance related costs, \$0.6 million of process reengineering consulting fees, and a reduction of \$0.2 million of facility exit costs. Refer to Note 9, "Operational Restructuring, Other Charges and Right-of-Use Asset Impairments," to our consolidated financial statements for additional details on these charges.

**Depreciation** decreased \$12.0 million, or 15.7%, during the fiscal year ended March 31, 2020, primarily related to the prior year write-off of leasehold improvement assets and furniture and fixture assets associated with the closure of the San Francisco office and the prior year acceleration of leasehold improvement assets in readiness for the relocation of the corporate headquarters in Boston. These decreases were partially offset by an increase related to certain assets being placed in service and the acceleration of assets affiliated with a vacated floor within one of our offices.

**Amortization of identifiable intangible assets** decreased \$13.5 million, or 15.0%, for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2020, primarily related to \$13.2 million of certain assets becoming fully amortized and a decrease of \$0.1 million related to a non-monetary exchange of existing identifiable technology and trademark for a perpetual license of the same technology.

**Goodwill impairment charges** of \$767.8 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2020 represented the results of the quantitative test of the fiscal year 2020 fourth quarter impairment tests, that concluded the fair value of the Higher Ed, School and North America reporting units were less than their respective carrying values, resulting in a goodwill impairment charge of \$729.6 million, \$28.7 million, and \$9.5 million, respectively. Refer to Note 7, "Goodwill," to our consolidated financial statements for additional details on these charges.

### **Non-Operating Items**

**Other income, net** for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2020 and 2019, was income of \$3.0 million and \$2.3 million, respectively, primarily related to foreign currency transaction gains.

**Interest expense** decreased \$2.9 million, or 1.6%, to \$174.6 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2020, primarily due to the steady decline in the LIBOR. The decline of the LIBOR rate in the fourth quarter of fiscal year 2020 was primarily attributable to actions taken by central banks around the world in response to the economic crisis related to the COVID-19 pandemic.

### **Income Tax**

**(Provision for) benefit from income taxes** was an \$11.8 million provision for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2020, compared with a benefit of \$31.3 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2019. The fiscal year ended March 31, 2020 provision for income taxes and the decrease in benefit compared to the same prior year period were primarily attributable to the establishment of a U.S. valuation allowance and a permanent book to tax difference related to the fiscal year 2020 fourth quarter impairment of non-deductible goodwill. The Company records valuation allowances against deferred tax assets when it determines that it is more likely than not based upon all available evidence, both positive and negative, that such deferred tax assets will not be realized. Given the Company is in a three year cumulative loss for the fiscal years ended March 31, 2020, 2019 and 2018, Management considered future taxable income in the form of reversals of existing temporary differences as a source of positive evidence. In fiscal year 2020, after evaluation, Management determined it was more likely than not that a portion of the Company's U.S. deferred tax assets would not be realizable. As a result, the Company established a valuation allowance on a portion of its federal and state deferred tax assets.

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Management's Discussion and Analysis of**  
**Financial Condition and Results of Operations**

**Segment Operating Results**

*Fiscal Year Ended March 31, 2021 Compared with Fiscal Year Ended March 31, 2020*

	Fiscal Year Ended March 31,		Change	
	2021	2020 <sup>(1)</sup>	\$	%
<i>(in millions)</i>				
Adjusted Revenues <sup>(2)</sup>				
U.S. Higher Education	\$ 651.2	\$ 645.2	\$ 6.0	0.9 %
International Higher Education	128.1	164.4	(36.3)	(22.1)%
Higher Education	779.3	809.6	(30.3)	(3.7)%
Secondary Education	131.8	158.0	(26.2)	(16.6)%
Workforce Skills	44.0	32.4	11.6	35.8 %
ELT	67.2	97.6	(30.4)	(31.1)%
Research	184.2	197.0	(12.8)	(6.5)%
Total Segments	1,206.5	1,294.6	(88.1)	(6.8)%
Corporate Enabling Functions <sup>(3)</sup>	16.2	15.7	0.5	3.2 %
Total Consolidated	<u>\$ 1,222.7</u>	<u>\$ 1,310.3</u>	<u>\$ (87.6)</u>	<u>(6.7)%</u>
Adjusted EBITDA <sup>(2)</sup>				
U.S. Higher Education	\$ 400.3	\$ 364.3	\$ 36.0	9.9 %
International Higher Education	36.0	62.6	(26.6)	(42.5)%
Higher Education	436.3	426.9	9.4	2.2 %
Secondary Education	55.4	76.7	(21.3)	(27.8)%
Workforce Skills	12.6	6.8	5.8	85.3 %
ELT	7.0	31.6	(24.6)	(77.8)%
Research	93.2	93.5	(0.3)	(0.3)%
Total Segments	604.5	635.5	(31.0)	(4.9)%
Corporate Enabling Functions <sup>(3)</sup>	(274.5)	(281.6)	7.1	(2.5)%
Total Consolidated	<u>\$ 330.0</u>	<u>\$ 353.9</u>	<u>\$ (23.9)</u>	<u>(6.8)%</u>
Adjusted EBITDA less Pre-Publication Costs <sup>(2)</sup>				
U.S. Higher Education	\$ 373.9	\$ 333.5	\$ 40.4	12.1 %
International Higher Education	30.0	56.7	(26.7)	(47.1)%
Higher Education	403.9	390.2	13.7	3.5 %
Secondary Education	46.2	68.6	(22.4)	(32.7)%
Workforce Skills	11.4	5.7	5.7	100.0 %
ELT	(5.3)	19.5	(24.8)	(127.2)%
Research	76.8	73.4	3.4	4.6 %
Total Segments	533.0	557.4	(24.4)	(4.4)%
Corporate Enabling Functions <sup>(3)</sup>	(274.5)	(281.6)	7.1	(2.5)%
Total Consolidated	<u>\$ 258.5</u>	<u>\$ 275.8</u>	<u>\$ (17.3)</u>	<u>(6.3)%</u>
Adjusted EBITDA less Capital Expenditures <sup>(2)</sup>				
U.S. Higher Education	\$ 373.9	\$ 333.5	\$ 40.4	12.1 %
International Higher Education	28.7	55.4	(26.7)	(48.2)%
Higher Education	402.6	388.9	13.7	3.5 %
Secondary Education	46.2	68.6	(22.4)	(32.7)%
Workforce Skills	11.4	5.7	5.7	100.0 %
ELT	(6.0)	18.6	(24.6)	(132.3)%
Research	76.8	73.2	3.6	4.9 %
Total Segments	531.0	555.0	(24.0)	(4.3)%
Corporate Enabling Functions <sup>(3)</sup>	(310.1)	(339.8)	29.7	(8.7)%
Total Consolidated	<u>\$ 220.9</u>	<u>\$ 215.2</u>	<u>\$ 5.7</u>	<u>2.6 %</u>

<sup>(1)</sup> Prior year amounts have been recast to current year standard internal currency exchange rates.

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Management's Discussion and Analysis of**  
**Financial Condition and Results of Operations**

- (2) See "Overview" for the definition of this Non-U.S. GAAP financial measure and "Reconciliations of Non-U.S. GAAP Financial Measures" for reconciliations to the most directly comparable financial measures prepared in accordance with U.S. GAAP.
- (3) Corporate enabling functions include our corporate and shared services, general & administrative costs which are not allocated to our segments, as well as revenue earned from our warehouse for third-party distribution services.

***U.S. Higher Education Adjusted Revenues for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2021*** increased \$6.0 million, or 0.9%, primarily driven by the following:

- digital sales growth driven by the performance of Cengage Unlimited, eBooks, and courseware; and
- less punitive price attrition compared to prior years, primarily caused by consumer purchase shifts toward lesser priced formats.

***International Higher Education Adjusted Revenues for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2021*** decreased \$36.3 million, or 22.1%, primarily driven by the following:

- declines of higher education product sales across Asia, Australia and Latin America primarily due to the impact of the COVID-19 pandemic containment measures and restrictions;
- a decrease related to a few large non-repeated sales orders when compared to the same prior year period; and
- lower sales of Australian school products; partially offset by
- an increase in sales in higher education products in Canada.

***Secondary Education Adjusted Revenues for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2021*** decreased \$26.2 million, or 16.6%, primarily driven by the following:

- a weakness in the school channel attributable to COVID-19 related school budget constraints; lower adoption performance; and
- deferred product launches.

***Workforce Skills Adjusted Revenues for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2021*** increased \$11.6 million, or 35.8%, primarily driven by the following:

- the workforce challenges created by the COVID-19 pandemic that increased demand for online career training courses to upskill and reskill;
- organizational investment to enhance capability to assist more learners; and
- shift from offline continuing education to online continuing education.

***ELT Adjusted Revenues for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2021*** decreased \$30.4 million, or 31.1%, primarily driven by the following:

- sales declines in ELT products across EMEA, Latin America and the United States resulting from the closure of institutions due to the COVID-19 pandemic.

***Research Adjusted Revenues for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2021*** decreased \$12.8 million, or 6.5%, primarily driven by the following:

- a decrease in print sales in the direct and wholesale markets related to customer budget constraints due to the COVID-19 pandemic; and
- archive sales declined in EMEA and Australia due to COVID-19 travel restrictions and shutdowns.

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Management's Discussion and Analysis of**  
**Financial Condition and Results of Operations**

***U.S. Higher Education Adjusted EBITDA less Pre-Publication Costs for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2021***

increased \$40.4 million, or 12.1%, to \$373.9 million primarily due to an increase in U.S. Higher Education Adjusted Revenue, a decrease in paper, print and binding costs, and a decrease in royalty expense. Additionally, there were declines in employee compensation and related costs as a result of the prior year implementation of an initiative to structurally lower our cost base and headcount reductions; reduced travel, trade shows and events spend resulting from the COVID-19 pandemic restrictions; and delayed pre-publication spend project timelines. These decreases were partially offset by an increase in third party commissions and professional services expenses.

***International Higher Education Adjusted EBITDA less Pre-Publication Costs for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2021*** decreased \$26.7 million, or 47.1%, to \$30.0 million, primarily due to the flow through of decreased International Higher Education Adjusted Revenues mostly attributable to the COVID-19 pandemic global isolation containment measures which resulted in the closure of institutions and schools. Additionally, there was an increase in employee compensation and related costs and transition services as a result of the acquisition of certain Nelson Canada assets and an increase in inventory obsolescence expense. These increases were partially offset by decreases in paper, print and binding costs; decreases in royalty expense; and reduced travel, trade shows and events spend resulting from the COVID-19 pandemic restrictions.

***Secondary Education Adjusted EBITDA less Pre-Publication Costs for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2021***

decreased \$22.4 million, or 32.7%, to \$46.2 million primarily due to the decline in Secondary Education Adjusted Revenues that were impacted by a weakness in the school channel attributable to COVID-19 related school budget constraints and lower adoption performance. There was an increase in inventory obsolescence expense related to the decline in sales of products nearing the end of their life cycle, partially offset by decreases in the following: paper, print, and binding costs, royalty expense and reduced travel, trade shows and events spend resulting from the COVID-19 pandemic restrictions.

***Workforce Skills Adjusted EBITDA less Pre-Publication Costs for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2021*** increased \$5.7 million to \$11.4 million primarily due to an increase in Workforce Skills Adjusted Revenue, partially offset by increases in royalty expense and employee compensation and related costs.

***ELT Adjusted EBITDA less Pre-Publication Costs for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2021*** decreased \$24.8 million, primarily due to the flow through of decreased ELT Adjusted Revenues and an increase in inventory obsolescence expense, partially offset by decreases in the following: paper, print and binding costs, royalty expense, and reduced travel, trade shows and events spend resulting from the COVID-19 pandemic restrictions.

***Research Adjusted EBITDA less Pre-Publication Costs for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2021*** increased \$3.4 million, or 4.6% to \$76.8 million primarily due to a decrease in employee compensation and related costs; reduced travel, trade shows and events spend resulting from the COVID-19 pandemic restrictions; delayed pre-publication spend project timelines; and a decrease in royalty expense. These decreases were partially offset by the lower contribution of Research Adjusted Revenues that were negatively impacted by the COVID-19 pandemic.

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Management's Discussion and Analysis of**  
**Financial Condition and Results of Operations**

*Fiscal Year Ended March 31, 2020 Compared with Fiscal Year Ended March 31, 2019*

	Fiscal Year Ended March 31,		Change	
	2020 <sup>(1)</sup>	2019 <sup>(1)</sup>	\$	%
<i>(in millions)</i>				
Adjusted Revenues <sup>(2)</sup>				
U.S. Higher Education	\$ 645.2	\$ 708.2	\$ (63.0)	(8.9)%
International Higher Education	164.4	165.7	(1.3)	(0.8)%
Higher Education	809.6	873.9	(64.3)	(7.4)%
Secondary Education	158.0	169.6	(11.6)	(6.8)%
Workforce Skills	32.4	29.6	2.8	9.5 %
ELT	97.6	92.2	5.4	5.9 %
Research	197.0	223.9	(26.9)	(12.0)%
Total Segments	1,294.6	1,389.2	(94.6)	(6.8)%
Corporate Enabling Functions <sup>(3)</sup>	15.7	14.2	1.5	10.6 %
Total Consolidated	<u>\$ 1,310.3</u>	<u>\$ 1,403.4</u>	<u>\$ (93.1)</u>	<u>(6.6)%</u>
Adjusted EBITDA <sup>(2)(3)</sup>				
U.S. Higher Education	\$ 364.3	\$ 375.2	\$ (10.9)	(2.9)%
International Higher Education	62.6	63.1	(0.5)	(0.8)%
Higher Education	426.9	438.3	(11.4)	(2.6)%
Secondary Education	76.7	75.7	1.0	1.3 %
Workforce Skills	6.8	6.3	0.5	7.9 %
ELT	31.6	25.5	6.1	23.9 %
Research	93.5	111.3	(17.8)	(16.0)%
Total Segments	635.5	657.1	(21.6)	(3.3)%
Corporate Enabling Functions <sup>(3)</sup>	(281.6)	(311.9)	30.3	(9.7)%
Total Consolidated	<u>\$ 353.9</u>	<u>\$ 345.2</u>	<u>\$ 8.7</u>	<u>2.5 %</u>
Adjusted EBITDA less Pre-Publication Costs <sup>(2)</sup>				
U.S. Higher Education	\$ 333.5	\$ 335.1	\$ (1.6)	(0.5)%
International Higher Education	56.7	56.6	0.1	0.2 %
Higher Education	390.2	391.7	(1.5)	(0.4)%
Secondary Education	68.6	63.6	5.0	7.9 %
Workforce Skills	5.7	5.6	0.1	1.8 %
ELT	19.5	12.3	7.2	58.5 %
Research	73.4	90.0	(16.6)	(18.4)%
Total Segments	557.4	563.2	(5.8)	(1.0)%
Corporate Enabling Functions <sup>(3)</sup>	(281.6)	(311.9)	30.3	(9.7)%
Total Consolidated	<u>\$ 275.8</u>	<u>\$ 251.3</u>	<u>\$ 24.5</u>	<u>9.7 %</u>
Adjusted EBITDA less Capital Expenditures <sup>(2)</sup>				
U.S. Higher Education	\$ 333.5	\$ 335.1	\$ (1.6)	(0.5)%
International Higher Education	55.4	56.0	(0.6)	(1.1)%
Higher Education	388.9	391.1	(2.2)	(0.6)%
Secondary Education	68.6	63.6	5.0	7.9 %
Workforce Skills	5.7	5.6	0.1	1.8 %
ELT	18.6	11.4	7.2	63.2 %
Research	73.2	89.6	(16.4)	(18.3)%
Total Segments	555.0	561.3	(6.3)	(1.1)%
Corporate Enabling Functions <sup>(3)</sup>	(339.8)	(368.3)	28.5	(7.7)%
Total Consolidated	<u>\$ 215.2</u>	<u>\$ 193.0</u>	<u>\$ 22.2</u>	<u>11.5 %</u>

<sup>(1)</sup> Prior year amounts have been recast to current year standard internal currency exchange rates.

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Management's Discussion and Analysis of**  
**Financial Condition and Results of Operations**

- (2) See "Overview" for the definition of this Non-U.S. GAAP financial measure and "Reconciliations of Non-U.S. GAAP Financial Measures" for reconciliations to the most directly comparable financial measures prepared in accordance with U.S. GAAP.
- (3) Corporate enabling functions include our corporate and shared services, general & administrative costs which are not allocated to our segments, as well as revenue earned from our warehouse for third-party distribution services.

***U.S. Higher Education Adjusted Revenues for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2020*** decreased \$63.0 million, or 8.9%, primarily driven by the following:

- two industry headwinds: declining enrollments and affordability-driven price compression;
- there were fewer software and content license sales compared to prior year; and
- the adverse fourth quarter impact of the COVID-19 pandemic that resulted in the closure of schools across the United States.

***International Higher Education Adjusted Revenues for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2020*** decreased \$1.3 million, or 0.8%, primarily driven by the following:

- the adverse impact of the COVID-19 pandemic resulting in the closure of institutions and schools; and
- a decline related to a prior year Australian print export deal of school products; partially offset by
- an increase in higher education product sales in Puerto Rico and from a large content license deal.

***Secondary Education Adjusted Revenues for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2020*** decreased \$11.6 million, or 6.8%, primarily driven by the following:

- a decrease in sales of AP&E and CTE programs.

***Workforce Skills Adjusted Revenues for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2020*** increased \$2.8 million, or 9.5%, primarily driven by the following:

- increased demand for online career training courses to upskill and reskill; and
- growth in the U.S. academic partner network.

***ELT Adjusted Revenues for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2020*** increased \$5.4 million, or 5.9%, primarily driven by the following:

- an increase in ELT product sales in China and the Middle East.

***Research Adjusted Revenues for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2020*** decreased \$26.9 million, or 12.0%, primarily driven by the following:

- decrease of sales in the United States mostly attributable to eBook sales;
- a prior year non-repeated subscription contract;
- a decrease of archive sales; and
- the negative impact due to the COVID-19 pandemic exposure in China resulting in the closure of universities across the country.

***U.S. Higher Education Adjusted EBITDA less Pre-Publication Costs for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2020*** decreased \$1.6 million, or 0.5%, to \$333.5 million primarily related to a decrease in U.S. Higher Education Adjusted Revenues and an increase in outside service fees, partially offset by decreases in product related costs directly attributable to the decline in adjusted revenue. Additionally, as a result of the implementation of an initiative to structurally lower our cost base, there were declines in the following: employee compensation and related costs, travel related costs, marketing expenses, and pre-publication spend costs.

***International Higher Education Adjusted EBITDA less Pre-Publication Costs for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2020*** increased \$0.1 million, or 0.2%, to \$56.7 million primarily due to a decrease in employee compensation and related costs and pre-publication spend costs, partially offset by a decline in International Higher Education Adjusted Revenues.

***Secondary Education Adjusted EBITDA less Pre-Publication Costs for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2020*** increased \$5.0 million, or 7.9%, to \$68.6 million primarily due to decreases in the following: paper, print and bind costs,



**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Management's Discussion and Analysis of**  
**Financial Condition and Results of Operations**

inventory obsolescence expense, travel related costs, marketing expenses, outside service fees and pre-publication spend costs. The decreases were partially offset by the decline in Secondary Education Adjusted Revenues.

**Workforce Skills Adjusted EBITDA less Pre-Publication Costs for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2020** increased \$0.1 million, or 1.8%, to \$5.7 million primarily due to an increase in Workforce Skills Adjusted Revenues, partially offset by an increase in employee compensation and related costs and royalty expenses.

**ELT Adjusted EBITDA less Pre-Publication Costs for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2020** increased \$7.2 million, or 58.5%, to \$19.5 million primarily related to an increase in ELT Adjusted Revenues and a decrease in pre-publication spend costs, partially offset by an increase in employee compensation and related costs and bad debt expense.

**Research Adjusted EBITDA less Pre-Publication Costs for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2020** decreased \$16.6 million, or 18.4%, to \$73.4 million, primarily due to the contribution of lower Research Adjusted Revenue in addition to a decrease in royalty expenses. Additionally, as a result of the implementation of an initiative to structurally lower our cost base, there were declines in employee compensation and related costs, travel related costs, outside service fees, and pre-publication spend costs.

**Reconciliations of Non-U.S. GAAP Financial Measures**

The following table reconciles Segment Adjusted Revenues to consolidated revenues per the consolidated statements of operations:

	Fiscal Year Ended March 31,		
	2021	2020 <sup>(1)</sup>	2019 <sup>(1)</sup>
<i>(in millions)</i>			
Total Consolidated Revenues	\$ 1,237.7	\$ 1,327.0	\$ 1,430.6
Corporate Enabling Functions	(16.2)	(15.7)	(14.2)
Impact of foreign currency	(15.0)	(16.7)	(27.2)
Total Segment Adjusted Revenues	<u>\$ 1,206.5</u>	<u>\$ 1,294.6</u>	<u>\$ 1,389.2</u>

<sup>(1)</sup> Prior year amounts have been recast to current year standard internal currency exchange rates.

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Management's Discussion and Analysis of**  
**Financial Condition and Results of Operations**

The following table reconciles net loss to Adjusted EBITDA less Capital Expenditures, Adjusted EBITDA less Pre-Publication Costs, and Adjusted EBITDA:

<i>(in millions)</i>	<b>Fiscal Year Ended March 31,</b>		
	<b>2021</b>	<b>2020<sup>(1)</sup></b>	<b>2019<sup>(1)</sup></b>
Net loss	\$ (110.1)	\$ (908.9)	\$ (108.5)
Impact of foreign currency	(3.9)	(3.9)	(7.9)
Equity-based compensation expense	6.9	5.4	8.4
Non-core other operating expenses <sup>(2)</sup>	3.3	2.0	9.6
Merger and acquisition-related costs	2.5	44.1	6.8
Right-of-use asset impairment charges	7.7	2.7	—
Amortization of pre-publication costs	89.1	99.1	109.9
Operational restructuring and other charges, net	8.5	21.0	17.5
Depreciation	59.5	64.2	76.2
Amortization of identifiable intangible assets	83.0	81.5	94.9
Goodwill impairment charges	9.7	767.8	—
Other income, net	6.1	(3.0)	(2.3)
Interest expense, net	155.2	170.1	171.9
Provision for (benefit from) income tax	12.5	11.8	(31.3)
Adjusted EBITDA	330.0	353.9	345.2
Additions to pre-publication costs <sup>(3)</sup>	(71.5)	(78.1)	(93.9)
Adjusted EBITDA less Pre-Publication Costs	258.5	275.8	251.3
Additions to property, equipment and capitalized internal-use software <sup>(3)</sup>	(37.6)	(60.6)	(58.3)
Adjusted EBITDA less Capital Expenditures	\$ 220.9	\$ 215.2	\$ 193.0

<sup>(1)</sup> Prior year amounts have been recast to current year standard internal currency exchange rates.

<sup>(2)</sup> Non-core other operating expenses includes primarily bank fees, duplicate rent expense, net, incurred during the build-out phase of the Company's headquarters in Boston, vacated facilities lease exit expense, favorable impact of the write off of deferred rent related to the San Francisco office lease buyout, technology expenses related to COVID-19, severance costs, contract termination costs, consulting costs and management fees.

<sup>(3)</sup> Additions to pre-publication costs and property, equipment and capitalized internal-use software are excluded from segment Adjusted EBITDA less Pre-Publication Costs on a constant currency and accrual basis. The impact of foreign currency exchange related to additions to pre-publication costs was \$0.8 million, \$0.5 million and \$1.1 million for the fiscal years ended March 31, 2021, 2020 and 2019, respectively. The impact of foreign currency exchange related to property, equipment and capitalized internal-use software was less than \$0.2 million for all periods presented.

### **Liquidity and Capital Resources**

<i>(in millions)</i>	<b>March 31,</b>	
	<b>2021</b>	<b>2020</b>
Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 457.5	\$ 366.0
<b>Debt:</b>		
Borrowings under credit facilities	—	50.0
Current portion of long-term debt <sup>(1)</sup>	39.4	17.1
Long-term debt <sup>(1)</sup>	2,192.6	2,224.9

<sup>(1)</sup> Both periods presented include original issue discount.

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Management's Discussion and Analysis of**  
**Financial Condition and Results of Operations**

Our principal sources of liquidity have historically been cash flows from operations and borrowings under our revolving credit facilities. Our cash flows from operations are impacted by the inherent seasonality of our business, whereby we typically utilize cash for operating activities in the first quarter of our fiscal year and generate operating cash during the remaining quarters of our fiscal year. After reviewing whether conditions and/or events raise substantial doubt about the Company's ability to meet future financial obligations over the next twelve months, including remaining uncertainty over the COVID-19 pandemic (particularly in international regions) the Company has concluded its net cash provided by operations combined with the Company's cash and cash equivalents and borrowing availability under its revolving credit facility will provide sufficient liquidity to fund the Company's current obligations, capital spending, debt service requirements and working capital requirements over at least the next twelve months.

Our liquidity and the ability to service our debt, as well as fund future acquisitions, share repurchases, other purchase commitments, operating leases, working capital and capital expenditure requirements, is dependent on our future financial performance, which is subject to general economic, financial and other factors that are beyond our control. There can be no assurance that our business will generate sufficient cash flows from operations, that anticipated net sales growth and operating improvements will be realized or that future borrowings will be available under our revolving credit facility, or any other facility, in an amount sufficient to enable us to service our indebtedness or to fund our other liquidity needs.

Our principal uses of cash are to fund operating costs and capital expenditures, including investments in product and technology offerings, strategic acquisitions, the payment of interest and principal on our outstanding debt, and share repurchases. We expect our cash flows from operations, combined with availability under our revolving credit facility and existing cash and cash equivalents, to provide sufficient liquidity to fund our current obligations, debt service requirements, projected working capital requirements, share repurchase program, restructuring obligations, scheduled long-term debt obligations and capital spending over at least the next twelve months. In addition, in February 2017, our board of directors approved an authorization of up to \$100 million to purchase in the open market our 9.50% senior notes and/or senior secured term loan. As of March 31, 2021, we had \$457.5 million of cash and cash equivalents, of which approximately \$118.0 million was held in our foreign subsidiaries. We may be required to incur United States and foreign tax liabilities if we repatriate these funds. We consider the earnings of our foreign subsidiaries to be permanently reinvested and based on our historical earnings, we believe any changes to this assertion would not have a material impact on our tax provision.

#### *Dividends*

There were no dividends declared in the fiscal years ended March 31, 2021, 2020 or 2019. We may declare additional dividend payments in the future using either cash from operations, long-term borrowings, or a combination of both.

#### *Long-term Debt*

On June 7, 2016, Cengage Learning, Inc., our wholly owned subsidiary, issued senior notes ("Senior Notes") and amended and restated its senior secured term loan facility ("Term Loan") and its asset-based lending revolving line of credit ("2016 ABL Facility"). On October 29, 2020, the Company entered into Amendment No. 1 (the "2020 ABL Facility Amendment") to the 2016 ABL Facility (as amended by the 2020 ABL Facility Amendment, the "ABL Facility").

#### **Senior Notes**

On June 7, 2016, Cengage Learning, Inc., our wholly owned subsidiary, issued \$620.0 million aggregate principal amount Senior Notes in a private placement, maturing June 15, 2024. The Senior Notes bear interest at a rate of 9.50% per annum, payable semi-annually in arrears on June 15 and December 15 of each year, commencing on December 15, 2016. We also have the option to redeem the Senior Notes, in whole or in part, at any time, at certain redemption prices as defined in the indenture. In addition, we may repurchase the Senior Notes in part, at any time, in the open market, in accordance with federal securities regulations.

Pursuant to the indenture governing the Senior Notes, all material, wholly owned domestic subsidiaries of Cengage Learning, Inc., subject to certain exceptions, will guarantee the Senior Notes, up to applicable legal limits. To date, there are no subsidiary guarantors of the Senior Notes.

The indenture related to the Senior Notes contains certain covenants that we may be subject to which restrict our and our subsidiaries' ability to, among other things: incur additional indebtedness or issue certain disqualified shares and preferred shares; create liens; pay dividends or distributions or redeem or repurchase equity; prepay subordinated debt or make certain investments; transfer and sell assets; engage in a consolidation or merger or sell, transfer or otherwise dispose of all or

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Management's Discussion and Analysis of**  
**Financial Condition and Results of Operations**

substantially all of our assets; and enter into certain transactions with affiliates. We will not be subject to these covenants if (i) the Senior Notes have Investment Grade Ratings from the relevant rating agencies, as defined in the terms of the Senior Notes, and (ii) no default has occurred and is continuing under the indenture. As of March 31, 2021, no default has occurred and we are compliant with all of the covenants of the indenture.

**Term Loan**

The Term Loan provides for senior secured term loans in an aggregate principal amount of \$1,710.0 million and matures on June 7, 2023. In addition, we may request one or more incremental credit facilities in an aggregate amount of up to \$500.0 million, plus additional amounts subject to certain requirements. Borrowings under the Term Loan bear interest at a rate equal to, at our option, either (a) a LIBOR rate determined by reference to the costs of funds for Eurodollar deposits for the interest period relevant to such borrowing, adjusted for certain additional costs, subject to a 1.00% floor ("Eurocurrency Rate Loan"), or (b) a base rate determined by reference to the highest of (i) the federal funds rate plus 0.50%, (ii) the prime rate and (iii) the one-month adjusted LIBOR rate plus 1.00%, in each case plus an applicable margin. As of March 31, 2021, we elected to carry the Term Loan as a Eurocurrency Rate Loan with an effective interest rate of 5.25%.

We are required to repay 0.25% of the original principal amount of the Term Loan on the last business day of each quarter. Following the end of each fiscal year, commencing with the fiscal year ending March 31, 2017, we must prepay a percentage between 0% and 50%, based on our total leverage ratio, of its Excess Cash Flow, as defined in the Term Loan agreement, within five business days after delivery of the financial statements. Based on our consolidated financial statements as of March 31, 2021, we calculated the prepayment due under the Excess Cash Flow provision was approximately \$39.4 million, which was reclassified to the current portion of long-term debt on the March 31, 2021 consolidated balance sheet. Prepayments made under the Excess Cash Flow provision are used to satisfy prospective mandatory quarterly principal repayments. We are also required to prepay loans with net proceeds from asset sales, casualty events, or issuances of indebtedness, subject to, in the case of asset sales and casualty events, reinvestment rights by us within certain time restrictions. We may prepay or repurchase the Term Loan, in whole or in part, at any time, without penalty. Based on our consolidated financial statements as of March 31, 2020 and 2019, respectively, we determined there were no prepayments due under the Excess Cash Flow provision for the fiscal years 2020 and 2019, respectively.

The obligations under the Term Loan are unconditionally guaranteed by Cengage Learning Holdco, Inc., a Delaware corporation, on a limited recourse basis, and all of our direct and indirect material, wholly owned domestic restricted subsidiaries, subject to certain exceptions. The obligations will be secured by (i) second-priority security interests in all accounts receivable, loans receivable, other receivables, inventory, related books and records, certain related general intangibles (excluding intellectual property and equity interests), deposit accounts (other than deposit accounts holding solely proceeds of Non-ABL priority collateral (as defined below)), cash and proceeds of the foregoing of Cengage Learning, Inc. and each subsidiary guarantor (collectively, the "ABL priority collateral"), with the ABL Facility secured by first-priority security interests therein, and (ii) first-priority security interests in substantially all assets of Cengage Learning, Inc. and each subsidiary guarantor, in each case whether owned on the closing date or thereafter acquired, other than the ABL priority collateral, including a pledge of our capital stock (prior to an IPO), the capital stock of future subsidiary guarantors and 65% of the voting capital stock of first-tier foreign subsidiaries that are not subsidiary guarantors, in each case subject to exceptions (collectively, the "Non-ABL priority collateral"), with the ABL Facility secured by second-priority security interests therein.

The Term Loan agreement contains certain customary conditions to borrowing, restrictions, affirmative covenants, negative covenants and events of default. The Term Loan does not contain any financial maintenance covenants.

**ABL Facility**

The availability of credit under the ABL Facility, of which, (x) \$206.5 million in aggregate principal expires on October 29, 2023 (or 91 days prior to June 7, 2023, if any term loans made pursuant to the Term Loan are then outstanding) ("2020 Extended Revolving Credit Facility") and (y) \$18.5 million in aggregate principal expires on June 7, 2021 ("2020 Non-Extended Revolving Credit Facility"), is equal to the lesser of (i) \$225.0 million and (ii) the Company's borrowing base. The borrowing base equals the sum of (i) 90% of eligible credit card receivables, plus (ii) 85% of eligible receivables, plus (iii) 85% of the orderly liquidation value of eligible inventory, plus (iv) 100% of cash not to exceed \$35.0 million. During the fiscal year ended March 31, 2021, we repaid borrowings of \$50 million under the ABL Facility, and as of March 31, 2021, there were no outstanding borrowings under the ABL facility. In addition, as of March 31, 2021 and March 31, 2020, the ABL Facility had \$10.6 million and \$10.7 million, respectively, in issued and outstanding letters of credit. The Company's available borrowing base, as of March 31, 2021, which is based on the balance sheet at February 28, 2021, was \$87.6 million,

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Management's Discussion and Analysis of**  
**Financial Condition and Results of Operations**

net of letters of credit. The ABL Facility has a fixed charge coverage ratio covenant if availability falls below a defined threshold. Based on availability under the ABL Facility as of March 31, 2021, the Company was not subject to the covenant.

The unused commitment fee on the 2020 Non-Extended Revolving Credit Facility will range between 0.25% and 0.375%, based upon the average facility usage for the most recently ended fiscal quarter and on the 2020 Extended Revolving Credit Facility the unused committee fee will be a fixed rate of 0.50%. Depending on the average daily availability outstanding letters of credit are also subject to a quarterly letter of credit participation fee which will vary between 1.75% and 2.25% on the 2020 Non-Extended Revolving Credit Facility and will vary between 2.25% and 2.75% on the 2020 Extended Revolving Credit Facility. During the fiscal year ended March 31, 2021 we incurred approximately \$0.9 million of unused commitment fees and \$0.2 million of letter of credit participation fees.

We have the right to prepay outstanding borrowings under the ABL Facility, in whole or in part, from time to time, without premium or penalty.

The obligations under the ABL Facility are unconditionally guaranteed by Cengage Learning Holdco, Inc., on a limited recourse basis, and all of our future direct and indirect material, wholly owned domestic restricted subsidiaries, subject to certain exceptions. The guarantees of those obligations will be secured by (i) first-priority security interests in the ABL priority collateral, with Term Loan secured by second-priority security interests therein, and (ii) second-priority security interests in the Non-ABL priority collateral, with the Term Loan secured by first-priority security interests therein.

The ABL Facility also contains certain other customary conditions to borrowing, restrictions, affirmative covenants, negative covenants and events of default.

### **Summary of Cash Flows**

Our cash flows from operating, investing and financing activities were as follows:

	<b>Fiscal Year Ended March 31,</b>		
	<b>2021</b>	<b>2020</b>	<b>2019</b>
<i>(in millions)</i>			
Net cash provided by (used in):			
Operating activities	\$ 273.3	\$ 154.4	\$ 189.6
Investing activities	(113.5)	(150.4)	(152.4)
Financing activities	(70.3)	27.2	(19.4)
Impact on cash, cash equivalents, and restricted cash from changes in foreign currency	2.0	(1.5)	(1.4)
Net increase in cash, cash equivalents, and restricted cash	<u>\$ 91.5</u>	<u>\$ 29.7</u>	<u>\$ 16.4</u>

### **Operating activities**

Net cash provided by operating activities for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2021 was \$273.3 million, an increase of \$118.9 million from net cash provided by operating activities of \$154.4 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2020. The increase was primarily due to higher net loss and a decrease in cash used for working capital. The decrease in cash used for working capital was driven by lower prepaid services, an increase in accrued incentive compensation and payroll accruals, and a shift in timing of interest payments on our Term Loan, which were partially offset by a decrease in trade payables due to the timing of purchases and payments. As a result of the ongoing uncertainty, duration, and potential rate of economic recovery around the COVID-19 pandemic the continued focus on liquidity and temporary actions taken to mitigate the risk to the business significantly improved the cash flow position when compared to the prior year.

Net cash provided by operating activities for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2020 was \$154.4 million, a decrease of \$35.2 million from net cash provided by operating activities of \$189.6 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2019. The decrease was primarily due to lower net loss partially offset by a decrease in cash used for net working capital. The decrease in cash used for working capital was driven by lower prepaid asset balances, higher deferred revenue balances driven by Cengage Unlimited, and a decrease in accounts receivable directly attributable to the overall decline in sales. In addition, there was a decrease in inventory driven by the continued shift to digital products as well as leaner purchasing methods implemented for traditional print products. These decreases were partially offset by an increase in cash used for net working capital primarily attributable to a decline in accrued and trade payables due to the timing of purchases and payments.

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Management's Discussion and Analysis of**  
**Financial Condition and Results of Operations**

Additionally, there was a decrease related to accrued bonus driven by the lower sales volume and the impact of the fiscal year 2019 incentive compensation payments made during the first quarter of fiscal year 2020. In the fiscal year ended March 31, 2020, COVID-19 did not have a material impact on our cash flows from operations. See Risk Factors, "The impact of global public health epidemics, including COVID-19, on our operations, and the operations of our customers, suppliers and print providers, may have material and adverse effects on our business, results of operations, financial condition and cash flows," for additional information.

***Investing activities***

Net cash used in investing activities for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2021 was \$113.5 million, a decrease of \$36.9 million from net cash used in investing activities of \$150.4 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2020. The decrease was primarily driven by a decrease of \$9.9 million in prepublication spend, a decrease of \$29.1 million in capital expenditures and a \$1.0 million return on investment from the sale of equity investment. The more substantial decrease in capital expenditures was mainly attributable to prior year spend related to the build-out of our headquarters in Boston. These decreases were partially offset by a \$2.9 million increase in cash used related to the acquisition of certain Nelson Canada assets and a \$0.7 million increase in spend to acquire certain author content rights.

Net cash used in investing activities for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2020 was \$150.4 million, a decrease of \$2.0 million from net cash used in investing activities of \$152.4 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2019. The decrease was primarily driven by a decrease in prepublication spend and the prior year period included the final deferred cash payment related to the Learning Objects, LLC acquisition. This decrease in use of cash was partially offset by an increase in capital expenditures spend related to the build-out phase of our new headquarters in Boston and spend to acquire certain author content rights.

***Financing activities***

Net cash used in financing activities for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2021 was \$70.3 million, an increase of \$97.5 million from net cash provided by financing activities of \$27.2 million in the fiscal year ended March 31, 2020. The increase in the current fiscal year cash used in financing activities primarily relates to the \$50.0 million repayment of the fiscal year ended March 31, 2020 cash that was provided by the \$50.0 million borrowings under the ABL Facility. Additionally, use in cash increased related to costs incurred of \$1.7 million for the 2020 ABL Facility Amendment and a \$0.7 million final cash consideration payment related to the acquisition of certain Nelson Canada assets. These increases were partially offset by a decrease of \$3.6 million of cash used for dividend equivalents paid in connection with the delivery of shares under vested restricted stock units and a decrease of \$1.3 million of cash used to acquire shares in connection with net settlement of equity-based awards compared with prior year period.

Net cash provided by financing activities for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2020 was \$27.2 million, an increase of \$46.6 million from net cash used in financing activities of \$19.4 million in the fiscal year ended March 31, 2019. The increase in cash was primarily due to a \$50.0 million borrowing under the ABL Revolving Credit Facility. Additionally, when compared to the prior year period, use of cash decreased \$1.2 million for dividend equivalents paid in connection with the delivery of shares under vested restricted stock units and \$5.8 million to acquire shares in connection with net settlement of equity-based awards. Use of cash increased by \$10.5 million related to scheduled quarterly principal loan payments.

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Management's Discussion and Analysis of**  
**Financial Condition and Results of Operations**

**Contractual Obligations and Commitments**

The following table summarizes our future contractual obligations as of March 31, 2021:

<i>(in millions)</i>	<b>Less than 1 Year</b>	<b>1-3 Years</b>	<b>3-5 Years</b>	<b>More than 5 Years</b>	<b>Total</b>
Long-term debt <sup>(1)</sup>	\$ 39.4	\$ 1,589.4	\$ 620.0	\$ —	\$ 2,248.8
Interest payments on outstanding debt <sup>(2)</sup>	144.8	231.8	29.5	—	406.1
Operating lease obligations <sup>(3)</sup>	18.7	31.5	18.4	39.8	108.4
Purchase obligations <sup>(4)</sup>	17.6	7.1	1.5	—	26.2
<b>Total</b>	<b>\$ 220.5</b>	<b>\$ 1,859.8</b>	<b>\$ 669.4</b>	<b>\$ 39.8</b>	<b>\$ 2,789.5</b>

<sup>(1)</sup> See Note 10, "Debt," to our consolidated financial statements for additional information.

<sup>(2)</sup> Interest on variable rate debt is estimated based upon the benchmark forward interest rates as of March 31, 2021. We expect our cash flows from operations, combined with availability of funds under our ABL Facility, to pay for these obligations.

<sup>(3)</sup> See Note 18, "Leases," to our consolidated financial statements for additional information on operating lease payments.

<sup>(4)</sup> Purchase obligations are agreements to purchase goods or services that are enforceable and legally binding. Our purchase obligations primarily consist of outsourcing arrangements related to general accounting, fixed asset and accounts payable functions, as well as purchased or licensed content to be used in our educational products and royalty guarantees derived from minimum usage requirements in agreements with content providers.

In addition, we anticipate capital expenditures, including pre-publication costs, in the range of \$115 million to \$135 million in the fiscal year ending March 31, 2022.

**Off-Balance Sheet Transactions**

In the ordinary course of business, we may engage in financial transactions that are not recorded, or may be recorded, on the consolidated balance sheets in amounts that are different than the full contract or notional amount of the transactions. With the exception of the contractual obligations and purchase commitments described in Note 17, "Commitments and Contingencies," to our consolidated financial statements and in the "Contractual Obligations and Commitments" section above, we do not currently have any material off-balance sheet transactions.

**Application of Critical Accounting Policies and Estimates**

Our consolidated financial statements are prepared in conformity with U.S. GAAP. In preparing our consolidated financial statements, we apply various accounting policies and are required to use estimates and assumptions. While we believe we have considered all available information, actual results could affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities, disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities at the date of the financial statements, and the reported amounts of revenues and expenses during the reporting periods. We believe that, of the significant accounting policies discussed in Note 1, "Basis of Presentation and Summary of Significant Accounting Policies," to our consolidated financial statements, the following accounting policies require our most subjective or complex judgments:

**Revenue Recognition:** We deliver digital, print and hybrid educational solutions for universities, students, professors, libraries, professionals and corporations around the world. These solutions are delivered through specialized content, applications and services. Although printed materials continue to be a widely sold learning resource, we are increasingly providing customers with digital resources and a significant portion of our revenues is derived from sales of digital solutions, including digital versions of our print products. Revenue is recognized when control of goods or services are transferred to our customers, in an amount that reflects the consideration we expect to be entitled to in exchange for those good or services. We determine revenue recognition through the following steps:

- Identification of the contract, or contracts, with a customer;
- Identification of the performance obligations in the contract;
- Determination of the transaction price;
- Allocation of the transaction price to the performance obligations in the contract; and
- Recognition of revenue when, or as we satisfy a performance obligation.

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Management's Discussion and Analysis of**  
**Financial Condition and Results of Operations**

We allocate the transaction price of the arrangement based on the relative estimated standalone selling price ("SSP") of each distinct performance obligation. In determining SSP, we maximize observable inputs and consider a number of data points, including:

- the pricing of standalone sales (in the instances where available);
- the pricing established by management when setting prices for deliverables that are intended to be sold on a standalone basis;
- contractually stated prices for deliverables that are intended to be sold on a standalone basis; and
- other pricing factors, such as the geographical region in which the products are sold and expected discounts based on the customer size and type.

We reduce transaction prices for estimated returns and other allowances that represent variable consideration which is estimated based on historical return experience and other relevant factors and record a reduction to revenue and accounts receivable. Other forms of contingent revenue or variable consideration are infrequent.

We assess the timing of the transfer of products or services to the customer as compared to the timing of payments to determine whether a significant financing component exists. We do not assess the existence of a significant financing component when the difference between payment and transfer of deliverables is a year or less. If the difference in timing arises for reasons other than the provision of finance to either the customer or the Company, no financing component is deemed to exist.

Shipping and handling activities are not considered a contract performance obligation. We record shipping and handling costs billed to customers as revenue with offsetting costs recorded as cost of revenue. Taxes collected from the customer and remitted to government entities are not included as part of the transaction price.

*Digital Content*—Revenue from sales of digital content without any future service obligations for us is recognized upon activation. Revenue from sales of digital solutions that contain future service obligations by us is deferred and recognized ratably as control of the promised product transfers to the customer. Incremental costs that are directly related to the deferred digital revenues are deferred and amortized over the subscription period. For incremental costs, we immediately expense internal and third party sales commissions on contracts with a duration of twelve months or less.

*Print and Other Materials*—We recognize revenues from the sale of print and other materials, less estimated returns, when the product is delivered and title, including the risks and rewards of ownership, passes to the customer. We classify amounts billed to customers for shipping and handling as revenues.

*Subscription-Based Products*—We recognize revenues from sales of subscription-based products, including hosted digital solutions, ratably over the term of the subscription. Subscription revenues received or receivable in advance of the delivery of services or publications is included in deferred revenue. Incremental costs that are directly related to the subscription revenues are deferred and amortized over the subscription period. Included among the underlying assumptions related to our estimates that impact the recognition of subscription income is the extent of our responsibility to provide access and support services to our subscription-based products.

*Arrangements with multiple performance obligations* —When a sales arrangement requires the delivery of more than one product or service, the individual performance obligations are accounted for separately if applicable criteria are met. Specifically, the revenues are allocated to each performance obligation based on relative stand-alone selling price of each element. The amount allocated to each obligation is then recognized as each obligation is fulfilled, provided that all other relevant revenue recognition criteria are met.

*Rental Revenue Arrangements*—We have rental and rental revenue share arrangements, including rentals of consigned inventory of printed products. We record rental revenue, or our share of rental revenue, when it is earned provided that all revenue recognition criteria are met.

*Deferred Commission Costs*—Our incremental costs of obtaining a contract, which consist of internal and third party sales commissions, are deferred and amortized over the expected period of benefit or the related contract renewal period, depending on whether the contract is an initial or renewed contract, respectively. A portfolio approach is used to determine a commission rate for capitalization, as we expect that the effects on the financial statements of applying this high level rate would not differ materially from applying detailed commission plan rates to individual contracts within the portfolio. We immediately expense commissions on contracts with durations twelve months or less. We classify deferred commission costs



**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Management's Discussion and Analysis of**  
**Financial Condition and Results of Operations**

as current or non-current based on the timing of when we expect to recognize the expense. The current and non-current portions of deferred commission costs are included in prepaid and other current assets, and other non-current assets, respectively, in the consolidated balance sheets.

**Reserve for Sales Returns:** Accounts receivable are reflected net of a reserve for sales returns. The reserve for sales returns is based on a review of our historical sales returns experience and our estimate of future returns associated with various product types and sales channels, as well as current industry trends in the businesses in which we operate. A change in the pattern or trends in returns could affect our estimated reserve for sales returns. If our estimate does not reflect actual returns in future periods, revenues could be understated or overstated for a particular period by the difference between actual returns and our original estimate. Actual sales returns are charged against the reserve as products are returned to inventory. In conjunction with the sales return reserve, we also record estimated increases in inventory, to the extent that product returns are resalable, and estimated recoupable royalty costs. The sales returns reserve as of March 31, 2021 and 2020 was \$54.9 million and \$36.3 million, respectively.

**Reserve for Inventory Obsolescence:** Inventories, which are principally comprised of textbooks and other print products, are stated at the lower of cost or net realizable value, with cost determined generally using the weighted average method. Reserves are established to reduce the cost of excess and obsolete inventories to their estimated net realizable value. The reserve is based upon our historical unit sales by title as compared to the number of units on hand, and considers our assessment of current industry conditions, including estimates of customer demand, and publication revision cycles. A change in sales trends could affect our estimated reserve. We periodically assess the obsolescence reserve by evaluating general factors such as inventory levels, historical sales, and the remaining life of our products. Inventory losses and destroys are charged against the reserve. The reserve for inventory obsolescence as of March 31, 2021 and 2020 was \$61.3 million and \$46.0 million, respectively.

**Impairment of Long-Lived Assets:** We evaluate long-lived assets for impairment whenever events or changes in circumstances indicate that the carrying amounts of the lowest level asset grouping, for which identifiable cash flows are independent of other assets, may not be recoverable. The initial test for impairment compares the asset carrying amounts with the sum of undiscounted future net cash flows expected to be generated by that asset grouping. If the carrying value is greater than the undiscounted cash flows, the individual assets are impaired proportionately, limited to their respective carrying values. We adopted ASC 842 as of April 1, 2019. During the fiscal years ended March 31, 2021 and 2020, we vacated and ceased use of multiple properties and recorded right-of-use asset impairment charges totaling \$7.7 million and \$2.7 million, respectively. For further detail, see Note 9, "Operational Restructuring, Other Charges and Right-of-Use Asset Impairments," and Note 18, "Leases," to our consolidated financial statements. At March 31, 2021, we assessed our long-lived assets for impairment due to the \$9.7 million goodwill impairment charge in the fourth quarter. No further impairments were identified.

**Goodwill:** We test the carrying value of goodwill for impairment at a reporting unit level annually in the fourth quarter of each fiscal year and whenever an event occurs or circumstances change that would more likely than not reduce the fair value of a reporting unit below its carrying amount. A goodwill impairment is the amount by which a reporting unit's carrying value exceeds its fair value, not to exceed the carrying amount of goodwill.

We may consider performing a detailed qualitative assessment, considering various company-specific, industry, and macro-economic factors, to determine whether it is necessary to perform the quantitative goodwill impairment test in the current year. If, as a result of weighing the evidence under the qualitative assessment, we conclude that it is not more likely than not the reporting unit's fair value is less than its carrying value, the quantitative impairment test is not performed. For those reporting units where a significant change or event occurs, and where potential impairment indicators exist, we continue to utilize the quantitative assessment to test goodwill for impairment.

We performed our annual goodwill impairment testing on our reporting units in the fourth quarter of fiscal year 2021. In order to estimate the fair value of each reporting unit, we used an equal-weighted application of the discounted cash flow and market approach methodologies. The discounted cash flow method estimates the value of a reporting unit by calculating the present value of expected future unlevered after-tax free cash flows to be generated by such reporting unit. This methodology requires the use of significant estimates, including discount rates, estimated residual growth rates, and projections of revenue growth, profit margins, and working capital. The projections underlying the valuation were based on our internal strategic forecasts for each reporting unit. Discount rates were calculated using the capital asset pricing model based on a weighted average cost of capital of comparable companies. The estimated residual growth rate was developed considering the long-term economic outlook of the industry and geographical region in which each reporting unit operates. The discount rate assumptions used in our fourth quarter goodwill impairment review ranged from 10.5% to 14.5% and residual growth rate assumptions used in our fourth quarter goodwill impairment review ranged from 1.0% to 4.0%. In addition to the discounted

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Management's Discussion and Analysis of**  
**Financial Condition and Results of Operations**

cash flow analysis, we perform the market approach which is a comparison of both trailing and forward financial multiples implied by the estimated reporting unit fair value to a range of multiples of publicly held companies with similar characteristics. If recent merger and acquisition transactions for industry or peer companies are available, the financial multiples implied by the estimated reporting unit fair value are also compared to the range of multiples from such precedent transactions. We apply comparable revenue and EBITDA multiples under this methodology as we consider these measures the most relevant to our business. For the impairment test performed in the fourth quarter of fiscal year 2021, we applied forward multiples of projected revenues in a range of 0.3x - 2.1x and forward multiples of projected EBITDA in a range of 7.5x - 9.0x.

Based on the quantitative test of the fiscal year 2021 fourth quarter impairment tests, we concluded that the fair value of our North America reporting unit was less than its respective carrying value, resulting in a goodwill impairment charge of \$9.7 million. This impairment was driven primarily from a reduction in projections due to the higher than expected impact of the COVID-19 pandemic on our previously reported International reportable segment. Total goodwill impairment charges recorded during the fiscal years ended March 31, 2021 and March 31, 2020 were \$9.7 million and \$767.8 million, respectively. There was no goodwill impairment charge recorded during the fiscal year ended March 31, 2019.

During the fourth quarter of fiscal year 2021, subsequent to the completion of the annual impairment test of goodwill, we changed our segment reporting structure to better align with the strategic objectives of the Company. The change in our reporting structure resulted in a change in the composition of our reporting units for goodwill impairment testing purposes. We determined our new reporting units, effective in the fourth quarter of fiscal year 2021, to be U.S. Higher Education and Milady, comprising the U.S. Higher Education reportable segment, Canada, EMEA, Asia, Latin America, Australia Higher Education and Australia K-12, within the International Higher Education reportable segment, Secondary Education, Workforce Skills and Research, all individual reportable segments, and North America, EMEA, Asia, Latin America and Australia, within the ELT reportable segment. To determine the amount of goodwill within our new reporting units we reallocated the goodwill, previously allocated to our former reporting units, to our new reporting units on a relative fair value basis as of March 31, 2021 (refer to Note 19, "Segment Information," for additional details).

As a result of the change in the Company's reporting unit structure, we reallocated goodwill as of March 31, 2021 to our reporting units using a relative fair value approach (refer to Note 7, "Goodwill," to our consolidated financial statements) and we performed a "before and after" test of the reporting units. We followed the same methodology, as described above for the annual impairment review, for the impairment review of the new reporting units. Our discount rate assumptions ranged from 10.5% to 13.5% and residual growth rate assumptions ranged from 2.0% to 4.0%. We applied forward multiples of projected revenues in a range of .5x – 3.25x and forward multiples of projected EBITDA in a range of 8.0x – 13.0x. For this impairment test, we concluded that the fair values of the reporting units exceeded their respective carrying values.

We will continue to evaluate goodwill on an annual basis and whenever events or changes in circumstances indicate that there may be potential indicators of impairment. If expectations for revenues and cash flows decline or if actual results are less than our revised forecasts, we may not be able to realize the carrying value of our goodwill and could be required to record future impairment charges.

**Legal Contingencies:** From time to time, we may become involved in various claims, disputes and legal or regulatory proceedings that arise in the ordinary course of business and relate to contractual and other obligations. We assess our potential contingent and other liabilities by analyzing our claims, disputes and legal and regulatory matters using all available information, and develop our views on estimated losses in consultation with our legal and other advisors. We determine whether a loss from a contingency should be accrued by assessing whether a loss is deemed probable and can be reasonably estimated. If the contingency is not probable or cannot be reasonably estimated, disclosure of the contingency shall be made when there is at least a reasonable possibility that a material loss may have been incurred. Proceeds from legal settlements are gain contingencies and are recognized in the income statement when all contingencies have been resolved. As such, gains from legal settlements are recorded once they are received.

**Equity-Based Compensation:** We account for our equity-based compensation plan under the fair value recognition provisions for share-based payments. We adopted the 2014 Cengage Learning Equity Incentive Plan (the "2014 Equity Incentive Plan") on March 31, 2014, and effective as of November 15, 2018, the Company's Board of Directors and the majority shareholders adopted an equity incentive plan (the "2018 Equity Incentive Plan"). Under the 2014 Equity Incentive Plan and the 2018 Equity Incentive Plans, we have granted awards in the form of restricted stock units ("RSUs"), incentive stock options ("ISOs"), non-qualified stock options ("NQSOs") and performance-based awards.

Our outstanding common stock is privately held and not traded on any public exchange market. Therefore, to value equity-based awards granted under the 2014 Equity Incentive Plan and the 2018 Equity Incentive Plan, we followed

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Management's Discussion and Analysis of**  
**Financial Condition and Results of Operations**

guidelines set forth in the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants ("AICPA") Accounting & Valuation Guide, *Valuation of Privately-Held Company Equity Securities Issued as Compensation*. To estimate the fair value of RSUs on the date of grant we are first required to estimate the value of our equity. Our estimate of equity value is based on an estimate of our enterprise value, reduced by the fair value of our outstanding indebtedness net of cash and cash equivalents. The value is then allocated to the outstanding common stock, RSUs, and stock options on a fully diluted basis using the Option-Pricing Method ("OPM"). Under the OPM, the value of each equity security is determined via a series of call options on our total equity value with exercise prices based on value thresholds, or breakpoints, at which value begins to be shared differently between the holders of each type of equity security. These call options are valued using a Black-Scholes option-pricing model with the following key inputs: equity value, risk-free interest rate, volatility factor, and time period from date of grant to a liquidity event. After determining the value allocated to RSUs, an appropriate discount for the lack of marketability was applied to arrive at fair value of the outstanding awards.

The following table summarizes the weighted-average grant date fair value of RSUs and performance-based RSUs granted under both the 2014 Equity Incentive Plan and the 2018 Equity Incentive Plan in the periods presented:

	Fiscal Year Ended March 31,		
	2021	2020	2019
Weighted-average grant date fair value	\$ 8.03	\$ 17.86	\$ 17.33

The estimated fair value of the stock options granted is based on the Black-Scholes option pricing model. To determine the value of the stock options, we used the results from the OPM allocation of equity value to common stock. The risk-free interest rate was based on interpolated yields of U.S Treasury securities with a 4.75 year term as of the date of grant. Estimates of our volatility were based on available information on the volatility of peer group public companies, with adjustments specific to our capital structure on the date of grant. Expected term was estimated using the weighted-average mid-point of the vesting date and date of expiration. The following table summarizes the weighted-average grant date fair value of stock options granted under the 2014 Equity Incentive Plan and stock options and performance-based stock options granted under the 2018 Equity Incentive Plan in the periods presented as well as the weighted average of the applicable assumptions used to value the stock options:

	Fiscal Year Ended March 31,		
	2021	2020	2019
Weighted-average grant date fair value	\$ 4.22	\$ 6.74	\$ 6.57
Weighted-average assumptions:			
Risk-free interest rate	0.4 %	2.5 %	2.6 %
Dividend yield	0.0 %	0.0 %	0.0 %
Expected volatility	65.0 %	40.0 %	40.0 %
Expected life (years)	4.75	4.75	4.75

Our enterprise value was determined using the same valuation techniques we employ when we conduct our annual goodwill impairment test. Our valuation is based on a weighted-average application of discounted cash flows, market related multiples and comparable transaction-related multiples. The significant assumptions used as inputs in the valuation calculations reflect our best estimates at the time of the date of grant. A change in any of the assumptions and inputs may have a significant impact on our estimated enterprise value.

As of March 31, 2021, there was aggregate unrecognized compensation cost of \$18.0 million related to outstanding stock option and RSU awards, granted under the 2014 Equity Incentive Plan and 2018 Equity Incentive Plan, that is expected to be recognized over a remaining weighted-average period of 3.4 years. As of March 31, 2021, there was aggregate unrecognized compensation cost of \$3.0 million related to performance-based RSUs granted under the 2014 Equity Incentive Plan. No compensation cost related to the performance-based stock options and performance-based RSUs under any equity incentive plan will be recognized until it is probable that the performance condition will be met. For additional information, see Note 13, "Equity-Based Compensation," to our consolidated financial statements.

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Management's Discussion and Analysis of**  
**Financial Condition and Results of Operations**

**Income Taxes:** We account for income taxes using the asset and liability method of ASC Topic 740, "Income Taxes." Under the asset and liability method, deferred tax assets and liabilities are recognized for the estimated future tax consequences attributable to differences between the financial statement carrying amounts of existing assets and liabilities and their respective tax bases. In addition, deferred tax assets are recorded with respect to net operating losses and other tax attribute carryforwards. Deferred tax assets and liabilities are measured using enacted tax rates in effect for the year in which those temporary differences are expected to be recovered or settled. Valuation allowances are established when realization of the benefit of deferred tax assets is not deemed to be more likely than not. The effect on deferred tax assets and liabilities of a change in income tax rates is recognized in income in the period that includes the enactment date.

**New Accounting Standards and Accounting Changes**

See Note 1, "Basis of Presentation and Summary of Significant Accounting Policies," to our consolidated financial statements for a description of new accounting standards and accounting changes.

**QUANTITATIVE AND QUALITATIVE DISCLOSURES ABOUT MARKET RISK**

We are exposed to market risk from foreign currency exchange rates and interest rates, which could affect our operating results, financial position and cash flows. We manage exposure to these market risks through our regular operating and financing activities and, when appropriate, through the use of derivative financial instruments to hedge economic exposures as well as reduce our earnings and cash flow volatility resulting from shifts in market rates. Volatility in our results of operations will vary with the type and amount of derivative hedges outstanding, as well as fluctuations in the currency and interest rate market during the period. Our derivative financial instruments, when held, are solely risk management tools and not for trading or speculative purposes. We have not entered into any derivative financial instruments in any period presented in the consolidated financial statements.

We continue to review liquidity sufficiency by performing various stress test scenarios, such as cash flow forecasting which considers hypothetical interest rate movements. Furthermore, we continue to closely monitor current events and the financial institutions that support our credit facility, including monitoring their credit ratings and outlooks, credit default swap levels, capital raising and merger activity.

For the fiscal years ended March 31, 2021, 2020, and 2019, we derived approximately 18%, 22% and 21%, respectively, of our Revenues from countries outside of the United States, with a significant portion of the related costs based in United States dollars, British pounds and Australian dollars. We anticipate that our future results will continue to be affected by market risks, including changes in political and economic conditions in foreign markets and fluctuations in currency rates, primarily the British pound and Australian dollar. A hypothetical 10% adverse change in foreign currency rates relative to the United States dollar during fiscal year 2021 would not have had a material impact on our net loss.

As of March 31, 2021, we had \$1,628.8 million in outstanding variable rate debt under our Term Loan at face value. The current effective interest rate for our Term Loan variable rate borrowing arrangements is based on a contractual minimum base interest rate, or London Interbank Offered Rate ("LIBOR") floor of 1.0%, plus the applicable margin. Currently, LIBOR is below the LIBOR floor and our debt is not subject to variable rates. A 50 basis point increase in LIBOR on our current Term Loan balance would have no impact on our annual interest expense due to the current LIBOR rate being below the LIBOR floor. Additionally, as of March 31, 2021, we had \$620.0 million in outstanding debt at a fixed rate of 9.50%.

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.  
CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

	<u>Page No.</u>
Report of Independent Auditors	70
Consolidated Balance Sheets	71
Consolidated Statements of Operations	72
Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Loss	73
Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows	74
Consolidated Statements of Stockholders' (Deficit) Equity	75
Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements	76



## **Report of Independent Auditors**

To the Board of Directors and Management of  
Cengage Learning Holdings II, Inc.

We have audited the accompanying consolidated financial statements of Cengage Learning Holdings II, Inc. and its subsidiaries, which comprise the consolidated balance sheets as of March 31, 2021 and 2020, and the related consolidated statements of operations, comprehensive loss, stockholders' (deficit) equity and cash flows for each of the three years in the period ended March 31, 2021.

### ***Management's Responsibility for the Consolidated Financial Statements***

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of the consolidated financial statements in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America; this includes the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of consolidated financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

### ***Auditors' Responsibility***

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the consolidated financial statements based on our audits. We conducted our audits in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the consolidated financial statements are free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the consolidated financial statements. The procedures selected depend on our judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the consolidated financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, we consider internal control relevant to the Company's preparation and fair presentation of the consolidated financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the Company's internal control. Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the consolidated financial statements. We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our audit opinion.

### ***Opinion***

In our opinion, the consolidated financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of Cengage Learning Holdings II, Inc. and its subsidiaries as of March 31, 2021 and 2020, and the results of their operations and their cash flows for each of the three years in the period ended March 31, 2021 in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

### ***Emphasis of Matter***

As discussed in Notes 1 and 3, respectively, to the consolidated financial statements, the Company changed the manner in which it accounts for leases as of April 1, 2019 and the manner in which it accounts for revenue from contracts with customers as of April 1, 2018. Our opinion is not modified with respect to this matter.

/s/ PricewaterhouseCoopers LLP

June 18, 2021

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Consolidated Balance Sheets**

	<b>March 31,</b>	
	<b>2021</b>	<b>2020</b>
<i>(in millions, except share and per share amounts)</i>		
<b>Assets</b>		
Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 457.5	\$ 366.0
Accounts receivable, net	147.8	184.3
Inventories	63.9	89.3
Prepaid expenses and other current assets	57.4	66.3
Total current assets	<u>726.6</u>	<u>705.9</u>
Property, equipment and capitalized internal-use software, net	121.2	142.3
Pre-publication costs, net	179.7	193.4
Author advances	10.2	9.4
Identifiable intangible assets, net	761.5	830.8
Goodwill, net	858.3	857.0
Deferred tax assets	12.4	7.5
Deferred financing costs	2.0	1.3
Right-of-use assets	46.6	59.3
Other non-current assets	24.9	22.6
Total assets	<u><u>\$ 2,743.4</u></u>	<u><u>\$ 2,829.5</u></u>
<b>Liabilities and Stockholders' Deficit</b>		
Accounts payable and accrued expenses	\$ 297.8	\$ 285.7
Deferred revenue	240.7	216.2
Revolving credit facilities	—	50.0
Current portion of long-term debt	39.4	17.1
Income taxes payable	2.6	2.5
Operating lease liabilities	13.0	14.9
Other current liabilities	15.9	13.9
Total current liabilities	<u>609.4</u>	<u>600.3</u>
Long-term debt	2,192.6	2,224.9
Deferred tax liabilities	39.4	32.7
Operating lease liabilities	59.8	65.3
Other non-current liabilities	54.5	40.1
Total liabilities	<u>2,955.7</u>	<u>2,963.3</u>
Commitments and contingencies (Note 17)		
Preferred stock (\$0.01 par value, 50,000,000 shares authorized, none issued)	—	—
Common stock (\$0.01 par value, 300,000,000 shares authorized, 62,104,687 and 61,965,811 shares issued and outstanding as of March 31, 2021 and 2020, respectively)	0.6	0.6
Additional paid-in capital	1,235.0	1,228.8
Accumulated deficit	(1,402.6)	(1,292.5)
Accumulated other comprehensive loss	(45.3)	(70.7)
Total stockholders' deficit	<u>(212.3)</u>	<u>(133.8)</u>
Total liabilities and stockholders' deficit	<u><u>\$ 2,743.4</u></u>	<u><u>\$ 2,829.5</u></u>

See accompanying notes to the consolidated financial statements.



**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Consolidated Statements of Operations**

<i>(in millions)</i>	<b>Fiscal Year Ended March 31,</b>		
	<b>2021</b>	<b>2020</b>	<b>2019</b>
Revenues	\$ 1,237.7	\$ 1,327.0	\$ 1,430.6
Cost of revenues, excluding amortization of pre-publication costs and identifiable intangible assets and depreciation stated below	537.9	589.5	642.6
Amortization of pre-publication costs	89.1	99.1	109.9
Amortization of identifiable intangible assets	5.5	4.9	4.8
Total cost of revenues, excluding depreciation stated below	632.5	693.5	757.3
Selling, general and administrative expenses, excluding depreciation stated below	376.1	387.1	452.9
Merger and acquisition-related costs	2.5	44.1	6.8
Right-of-use asset impairment charges	7.7	2.7	—
Operational restructuring and other charges, net	8.5	21.0	17.5
Depreciation	59.5	64.2	76.2
Amortization of identifiable intangible assets	77.5	76.6	90.1
Goodwill impairment charges	9.7	767.8	—
Other income, net	(0.7)	—	—
Total costs and expenses	1,173.3	2,057.0	1,400.8
Operating income (loss)	64.4	(730.0)	29.8
Other (expense) income, net	(6.8)	3.0	2.3
Interest income	0.8	4.5	5.6
Interest expense	(156.0)	(174.6)	(177.5)
Loss before taxes	(97.6)	(897.1)	(139.8)
(Provision for) benefit from income taxes	(12.5)	(11.8)	31.3
Net loss	<u>\$ (110.1)</u>	<u>\$ (908.9)</u>	<u>\$ (108.5)</u>

See accompanying notes to the consolidated financial statements.

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Loss**

	Fiscal Year Ended March 31,		
	2021	2020	2019
<i>(in millions)</i>			
Net loss	\$ (110.1)	\$ (908.9)	\$ (108.5)
Other comprehensive income (loss):			
Foreign currency translation adjustments	25.4	(16.7)	(14.6)
Comprehensive loss	<u>\$ (84.7)</u>	<u>\$ (925.6)</u>	<u>\$ (123.1)</u>

See accompanying notes to the consolidated financial statements.

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows**

	Fiscal Year Ended March 31,		
	2021	2020	2019
<i>(in millions)</i>			
<b>Cash Flows from Operating Activities</b>			
Net loss	\$ (110.1)	\$ (908.9)	\$ (108.5)
Adjustments to reconcile net loss to net cash provided by operating activities:			
Amortization of pre-publication costs	89.1	99.1	109.9
Depreciation	59.5	64.2	76.2
Amortization of identifiable intangible assets	83.0	81.5	94.9
Amortization of operating lease assets	12.0	13.8	—
Goodwill impairment charges	9.7	767.8	—
Right-of-use asset impairment charges	7.7	2.7	—
Amortization of debt discounts and deferred financing costs	8.1	8.2	8.2
Non-cash equity-based compensation expense	6.9	5.4	8.4
Operational restructuring and other charges	8.5	21.0	17.5
Cash payments for operational restructuring charges	(8.0)	(26.3)	(12.1)
Merger and acquisition-related charges	2.5	44.1	6.8
Cash payments for merger and acquisition-related charges, net	(16.4)	(37.4)	(0.2)
Deferred income taxes	4.1	(2.1)	(43.6)
Changes in operating assets and liabilities, net of acquisitions	116.3	23.7	30.8
Other, net	0.4	(2.4)	1.3
Net cash provided by operating activities	273.3	154.4	189.6
<b>Cash Flows from Investing Activities</b>			
Acquisitions of businesses, net of cash acquired	(2.9)	—	(1.5)
Acquisition of author content rights	(3.5)	(2.8)	(1.2)
Additions to pre-publication costs	(70.0)	(79.9)	(95.8)
Additions to property, equipment and capitalized internal-use software	(38.1)	(67.2)	(53.4)
Proceeds from sale of equity investments	1.0	—	—
Other, net	—	(0.5)	(0.5)
Net cash used in investing activities	(113.5)	(150.4)	(152.4)
<b>Cash Flows from Financing Activities</b>			
Repayments of long-term debt	(17.1)	(17.2)	(6.7)
Borrowings under the ABL Facility	—	50.0	—
Repayments under the ABL Facility	(50.0)	—	—
Debt issuance costs and other financing fees	(1.7)	—	—
Deferred payment, acquisition of businesses	(0.7)	—	—
Dividend equivalents paid	(0.1)	(3.7)	(4.9)
Proceeds from the exercise of stock options	—	0.1	—
Common stock repurchases for tax withholding for net settlement of equity awards	(0.7)	(2.0)	(7.8)
Net cash (used in) provided by financing activities	(70.3)	27.2	(19.4)
<b>Impact on Cash, Cash Equivalents, and Restricted Cash from Changes in Foreign Currency</b>	2.0	(1.5)	(1.4)
<b>Net Increase in Cash, Cash Equivalents, and Restricted Cash</b>	91.5	29.7	16.4
<b>Cash, Cash Equivalents, and Restricted Cash</b>			
Beginning of year	366.0	336.3	319.9
End of year	\$ 457.5	\$ 366.0	\$ 336.3

See accompanying notes to the consolidated financial statements.

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Consolidated Statements of Stockholders' (Deficit) Equity**

<i>(in millions)</i>	<u>Common Stock</u>		<u>Additional Paid-In Capital</u>	<u>Accumulated Deficit</u>	<u>Accumulated Other Comprehensive Loss</u>	<u>Total Stockholders' (Deficit) Equity</u>
	<u>Shares Issued</u>	<u>Par Value</u>				
Balance at March 31, 2018	61.0	\$ 0.6	\$ 1,224.7	\$ (275.1)	\$ (39.4)	\$ 910.8
Net loss	—	—	—	(108.5)	—	(108.5)
Foreign currency translation adjustment	—	—	—	—	(14.6)	(14.6)
Issuance of common stock under share based compensation plan and shares withheld to cover tax withholding requirements	0.5	—	(7.8)	—	—	(7.8)
Equity-based compensation	—	—	8.4	—	—	8.4
Balance at March 31, 2019	61.5	0.6	1,225.3	(383.6)	(54.0)	788.3
Net loss	—	—	—	(908.9)	—	(908.9)
Foreign currency translation adjustment	—	—	—	—	(16.7)	(16.7)
Proceeds from exercise of stock options	—	—	0.1	—	—	0.1
Issuance of common stock under share based compensation plan and shares withheld to cover tax withholding requirements	0.5	—	(2.0)	—	—	(2.0)
Equity-based compensation	—	—	5.4	—	—	5.4
Balance at March 31, 2020	62.0	0.6	1,228.8	(1,292.5)	(70.7)	(133.8)
Net loss	—	—	—	(110.1)	—	(110.1)
Foreign currency translation adjustment	—	—	—	—	25.4	25.4
Issuance of common stock under share based compensation plan and shares withheld to cover tax withholding requirements	0.1	—	(0.7)	—	—	(0.7)
Equity-based compensation	—	—	6.9	—	—	6.9
Balance at March 31, 2021	62.1	\$ 0.6	\$ 1,235.0	\$ (1,402.6)	\$ (45.3)	\$ (212.3)

See accompanying notes to the consolidated financial statements.

## **1. BASIS OF PRESENTATION AND SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES**

### ***Description of Business***

Cengage Learning Holdings II, Inc., together with its consolidated subsidiaries (“Cengage” or the “Company”) is a leading education and technology company built for learners, serving the higher education, school, professional, library and workforce training markets worldwide. The Company is a publisher of course materials in the U.S. higher education market, with strong positions across all major disciplines. Increasingly, the Company is expanding its offerings in technology and academic services, including digital homework solutions and support services for use of its digital products, in response to industry demand for more fully integrated solutions. In addition, operating under its Gale brand, the Company is a leading global provider of library reference materials with a vast collection of primary source content.

### ***Basis of Presentation***

The Company prepares its financial statements and related disclosures in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America (“U.S. GAAP”). The consolidated financial statements include the accounts of Cengage and its majority and wholly-owned subsidiaries. All intercompany accounts and transactions have been eliminated.

A previously disclosed in our Annual report for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2020, the Company recorded a correction of certain prior-period errors and determined the correction was immaterial to the fiscal year 2020 financial statements and prior period financial statements. For the fiscal year ending March 31, 2021, the Company elected to revise all periods presented for the previously disclosed immaterial errors. Refer to Note 21, “Revision of Prior Period Financial Statements.”

### ***Change in Segment Reporting Structure***

During the fourth quarter of fiscal year 2021, the Company changed its reporting structure to better align with the strategic objectives of the Company, which were driven because of changes to the information reviewed by the Company’s chief operating decision maker. The Company’s previous reportable segments, Learning, International and Gale have been recast to conform to the current presentation. Refer to Note 19, “Segment Information,” for additional details.

### ***COVID-19 Pandemic***

The unprecedented and ongoing spread of COVID-19 has created significant volatility, uncertainty, and economic disruption due to the mass shutdowns of businesses and widespread closures of academic institutions in the United States and the majority of other markets. In the second and third quarters, many businesses and institutions started to re-open; however, decisions to re-open were inconsistent across our portfolio and geography of customers, and, therefore, the effect of the re-openings on our business was inconsistent. Against this, the Company continues to see opportunities to accelerate the transition to digital learning in support of its customers, and beyond that for retraining and reskilling in response to increased unemployment.

The Company’s response to COVID-19 was driven by the following principles to balance the risks and opportunities. Firstly, taking action early to ensure the Company has sufficient liquidity against a severe downturn scenario in fiscal year 2021. Secondly, to preserve the operational capability, capacity and flexibility to respond effectively to evolving customer needs and opportunities.

In response to these developments, as previously reported in the 2020 Annual Report, the Company implemented measures to help mitigate the impact on its financial position and operations. These measures included, but were not limited to, the following:

- \$50 million drawn from the ABL Facility;
- Wide ranging employee actions, including temporary reductions to remuneration and benefits;
- Actions across our supply chain and reassessment of spend plans against customer priorities; and
- Leverage of government programs.

The results of these actions, combined with significantly lower than anticipated enrollment declines in U.S. higher education institutions during the fall semester, was better than expected operating results and liquidity position for the fiscal

year ended March 31, 2021. Consequently, the Company determined it no longer deemed the draw on the ABL Facility necessary and fully paid down the ABL Facility prior to the end of the second quarter and, during the third quarter, the temporary reductions to employee salaries were restored. While these recent results are promising, the ongoing impact of the pandemic remains uncertain, particularly within international regions, and therefore, the Company plans to continue focusing on its cost control measures and actions across its supply chain, and maintain a heightened focus on cash and working capital management. The ability of the Company to fund planned operations is based on assumptions which involve significant judgment and estimates of future revenues, capital spend and other operating costs. The Company's current assumptions include planning for ongoing headwinds from the pandemic and slower recovery into fiscal year 2022 within the Company's International markets where the pandemic has had a more adverse impact than in the U.S. higher education market. In the United States we expect stabilizing enrollment with the potential for growth as students who deferred due to COVID-19 expect to enroll again in the coming year. While we feel confident as we move into fiscal year 2022, current circumstances are dynamic and depend on future developments, including but not limited to, rate of occurrence and mutations of COVID-19 and the efficacy and availability of the vaccine globally.

#### ***Concentration of Credit Risk***

No customer was individually greater than 10% of the Company's total gross accounts receivable as of March 31, 2021 and 2020. The Company's top three customers accounted for approximately 18% and 19% of the Company's total gross accounts receivable as of March 31, 2021 and 2020. Additionally, no customer was individually greater than 10% of the Company's consolidated revenues in the periods presented. The Company's top three customers accounted for approximately 13% of the Company's consolidated revenues in fiscal years 2021 and 2019 and 12% in fiscal year 2020.

#### ***Use of Estimates***

The preparation of financial statements in conformity with U.S. GAAP requires management to make estimates and assumptions that affect the amounts reported in these consolidated financial statements and accompanying notes. Although these estimates are based on management's best knowledge of current events and actions that the Company may undertake in the future, actual results could differ from those estimates. These estimates include, but are not limited to, reserves for sales returns and inventory obsolescence, the allowance for doubtful accounts, deferred tax assets and liabilities, the valuation allowances for deferred tax assets and liabilities, operational restructuring and other charges, legal and tax contingencies, purchase accounting and equity-based compensation, as well as future cash flows and fair values used in the assessment of the realizability of long-lived assets, goodwill and identifiable intangible assets.

The full extent to which the COVID-19 pandemic will directly or indirectly impact the Company's business, results of operations and financial condition will depend on future developments that are highly uncertain, including as a result of new information that may emerge concerning COVID-19 and the actions taken to contain it or treat it, as well as the economic impact on local, regional, national and international customers and markets. The Company has made estimates of the impact of COVID-19 within its financial statements and there may be changes to those estimates in future periods. Actual results may differ from these estimates.

#### ***Seasonality and Comparability***

The Company's revenues, operating profit and operating cash flows are impacted by the inherent seasonality of the academic calendar. This seasonality affects the Company's working capital requirements and hence its overall financing needs. For example, the Company's fiscal year ends March 31 and we typically incur a net cash deficit from all of our activities in the first quarter. In addition, changes in customer ordering patterns may impact the comparison of the Company's results in a quarter with the same quarter of the previous year, or in a fiscal year with the prior fiscal year, where its customers may shift the timing of material orders for a number of reasons, including, but not limited to, changes in academic semester start dates, changes in inventory management practices, and a shift in customer base driven by an increase in direct to student subscription products or to institutional sales models. Moreover, remaining uncertainty resulting from the COVID-19 pandemic may result in fiscal year 2022 not following historic patterns.

As the Company continues to migrate its service offerings towards hosted digital solutions that are delivered over a period of time, the associated revenues will be recognized ratably over the applicable subscription period, with amounts billed in excess of revenues recognized reflected as deferred revenue. This represents a change from traditional print products where revenues are typically recognized upon shipment of the material to the customer. Reported revenues will shift from being driven by sales in the same period to deferred recognition as revenues attributable to hosted digital solutions are recognized in subsequent periods. Deferred revenue represents amounts billed in advance to customers that will be

recognized as revenues in subsequent periods as products and services are delivered to customers. See Note 3, "Revenue Recognition," for additional information.

### ***Summary of Significant Accounting Policies***

#### ***Revenue Recognition***

The Company delivers digital, print and hybrid educational solutions for universities, students, professors, libraries, professionals, and corporations around the world. These solutions are delivered through specialized content, applications and services. A significant portion of the Company's revenues is derived from sales of digital solutions, including digital versions of its print products. Revenue is recognized when control of goods or services are transferred to our customers, in an amount that reflects the consideration we expect to be entitled to in exchange for those good or services. The Company determines revenue recognition through the following steps:

- Identification of the contract, or contracts, with a customer;
- Identification of the performance obligations in the contract;
- Determination of the transaction price;
- Allocation of the transaction price to the performance obligations in the contract; and
- Recognition of revenue when, or as we satisfy a performance obligation.

Allocation of the transaction price of the arrangement is based on the relative estimated standalone selling price ("SSP") of each distinct performance obligation. SSP is determine by maximizing observable inputs and considering a number of data points, including:

- the pricing of standalone sales (in the instances where available);
- the pricing established by management when setting prices for deliverables that are intended to be sold on a standalone basis;
- contractually stated prices for deliverables that are intended to be sold on a standalone basis; and
- other pricing factors, such as the geographical region in which the products are sold and expected discounts based on the customer size and type.

Reduced transaction prices for estimated returns and other allowances that represent variable consideration which is estimated based on historical return experience and other relevant factors and is recorded as a reduction to revenue and accounts receivable. Other forms of contingent revenue or variable consideration are infrequent.

The timing of the transfer of products or services to the customer is assessed as compared to the timing of payments to determine whether a significant financing component exists. The Company does not assess the existence of a significant financing component when the difference between payment and transfer of deliverables is a year or less. If the difference in timing arises for reasons other than the provision of finance to either the customer or the Company, no financing component is deemed to exist.

Shipping and handling activities are not considered a contract performance obligation. Shipping and handling costs billed to customers are recorded as revenue with offsetting costs recorded as cost of revenue. Taxes collected from the customer and remitted to government entities are not included as part of the transaction price.

*Digital Content*—Revenue from sales of digital content without any future service obligations for the Company is recognized upon activation. Revenue from sales of digital solutions that contain future service obligations by the Company is deferred and recognized ratably as control of the promised product transfers to the customer. Incremental costs that are directly related to the deferred digital revenues are deferred and amortized over the subscription period. For incremental costs, the Company immediately expenses internal and third party sales commissions on contracts with a duration of twelve months or less.

*Print and Other Materials*—The Company recognizes revenues from the sale of print and other materials, less estimated returns, when the product is delivered and title, including the risks and rewards of ownership, passes to the customer. Amounts billed to customers for shipping and handling are classified as revenues.

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements**

*Subscription-Based Products*—The Company recognizes revenues from the sale of subscription-based products, including hosted digital solutions, ratably over the term of the subscription. Subscription proceeds received or receivable in advance of the delivery of services or publications are included in deferred revenue. Incremental costs that are directly related to the subscription revenues are deferred and amortized over the subscription period.

*Arrangements with multiple performance obligations* —When a sales arrangement requires the delivery of more than one product or service, the individual performance obligations are accounted for separately if applicable criteria are met. Specifically, the revenues are allocated to each performance obligation based on relative stand-alone selling price of each element. The amount allocated to each obligation is then recognized as each obligation is fulfilled, provided that all other relevant revenue recognition criteria are met.

*Rental Revenue Arrangements*—The Company enters into rental and rental revenue share arrangements, including rentals of consigned inventory of printed products. The Company records rental revenue, or its share of rental revenue, when it is earned, provided that all revenue recognition criteria are met.

*Deferred Commission Costs*—The Company’s incremental costs of obtaining a contract, which consist of internal and third party sales commissions, are deferred and amortized over the expected period of benefit or the related contract renewal period, depending on whether the contract is an initial or renewed contract, respectively. A portfolio approach is used to determine a high level commission rate for capitalization, as the Company expects that the effects on the financial statements of applying this high level rate would not differ materially from applying detailed commission plan rates to individual contracts within the portfolio. The Company immediately expenses commissions on contracts with durations of twelve months or less. We classify deferred commission costs as current or non-current based on the timing of when we expect to recognize the expense. The current and non-current portions of deferred commission costs are included in prepaid and other current assets, and other non-current assets, respectively, in the consolidated balance sheets.

***Advertising Costs***

Costs incurred for producing and communicating advertising are expensed when incurred. Advertising expenses, which include the cost of complimentary print products provided to professors in advance of a title release, amounted to the following:

	Fiscal Year Ended March 31,		
	2021	2020	2019
(in millions)			
Advertising costs	\$ 12.8	\$ 21.1	\$ 27.5

***Cash and Cash Equivalents***

Cash consists of cash on deposit in banks. Cash equivalents are generally high-quality, short-term money market instruments with original maturities of three months or less. Cash equivalents are stated at cost plus accrued interest, which approximates fair value.

***Accounts Receivable, Allowance for Doubtful Accounts and Reserve for Sales Returns***

Accounts receivable include amounts billed and currently due from customers and are recorded net of allowance for doubtful accounts and reserves for sales returns. Most of the Company’s accounts receivable are due from universities, bookstores, wholesalers, libraries, professionals, and corporations. Trade accounts receivable are recorded at the invoiced amount and do not bear interest. Accounts receivable are reflected net of an allowance for doubtful accounts of \$16.9 million and \$14.6 million as of March 31, 2021 and 2020, respectively, and a reserve for sales returns of \$54.9 million and \$36.3 million as of March 31, 2021 and 2020, respectively.

In the normal course of business, we extend credit to customers that satisfy predefined criteria. The Company estimates the collectability of its receivables and develops those estimates to reflect the risk of credit loss. The Company establishes an allowance for doubtful accounts by evaluating the length of time individual receivables are past due, historical collection experience and credit evaluations of its customers as well as the economic and competitive environments. The Company monitors its ongoing credit exposure through an active review of collections trends and specific facts and circumstances. Accounts receivable losses for bad debt are written-off against the allowance when the receivable is determined to be uncollectible.



### ***Inventories***

Inventories, which are principally comprised of textbooks and other print products, are stated at the lower of cost or net realizable value, with cost determined using the weighted-average method. Reserves are established to reduce the cost of excess and obsolete inventories to their estimated net realizable value and are reflected in cost of revenues in the consolidated statements of operations. The Company assesses the obsolescence reserve quarterly by evaluating factors such as inventory levels, historical sales, and the remaining life of its products. Inventory losses and destroys are written-off against the reserve. The inventory obsolescence reserve is reported as a reduction of the inventory balance in the consolidated balance sheets and was \$61.3 million and \$46.0 million as of March 31, 2021 and 2020, respectively.

### ***Consigned Inventory***

Consigned inventory consists mainly of textbooks available through our formal rental program stated at the lower of cost or net realizable value, with cost determined using the weighted-average method. At the time a transfer of stock to the partner is completed, the book is then moved from inventories, net to non-current assets. The cost of the book is amortized down over the expected rental usage period, with the related amortization expense included within cost of sales in the consolidated statement of operations. Returns are moved back into inventories, and buyouts are expensed, net at the current residual value.

### ***Property, Equipment and Capitalized Internal-Use Software***

Property, equipment and capitalized internal-use software is stated at cost less accumulated depreciation and amortization. Computer hardware under capital lease is stated at fair value at inception of the lease, less accumulated amortization. Internal-use software includes customer-facing platforms used to deliver certain of the Company's digital products and services. Major updates and improvements are capitalized, while maintenance and repairs, which do not extend functionality or useful life, are expensed as incurred.

Costs incurred for computer software developed or obtained for internal use are expensed during the preliminary project stage, which includes conceptual formulation and review of alternatives. Once that stage is complete, the application development stage, which includes design, coding and testing, begins. Direct internal and external costs incurred during this stage are capitalized. Internal costs that are capitalized represent amounts paid to employees through wages, salaries and salary-related costs. Capitalization of costs ceases when the software is ready for its intended use and all substantial testing is completed. Upgrades and enhancements which provide significant added functionality are accounted for in the same manner. Amortization expense on capitalized internal-use software was \$46.7 million, \$50.4 million, and \$52.3 million for the fiscal years ended March 31, 2021, 2020 and 2019, respectively.

Upon disposal of property, equipment and capitalized internal-use software, the cost of the assets and related accumulated depreciation are removed from the accounts and the resulting gain or loss is reflected in earnings. The Company periodically evaluates the depreciation methods, rates, and remaining lives of such assets, which are dependent upon the economic useful life of the asset. When the Company determines to abandon an asset that is in use, the Company records accelerated depreciation through the date of abandonment. When the Company commits to a plan to abandon an asset before the end of its previously estimated useful life, future depreciation is revised to reflect the use of the asset over its shortened remaining useful life. An asset to be abandoned is disposed of when it ceases to be used. During fiscal years 2021, 2020 and 2019, the amount of accelerated depreciation associated with the abandonment of certain projects was inconsequential.

Depreciation and amortization is computed on a straight-line basis over the following estimated useful lives:

Purchased and internally-developed software	3–10 years
Computer hardware	3–5 years
Buildings and building improvements	10–40 years
Furniture and equipment	3–10 years
Leasehold improvements	Lesser of lease term or estimated useful life

### ***Pre-publication Costs***

Pre-publication costs are incurred prior to the publication date of a title or release date of a product and represent activities associated with product development. These may be performed internally or outsourced to subject matter specialists and include, but are not limited to, editorial review and fact verification, graphic art design and layout and the process of conversion from print to digital media or within various formats of digital media. In addition, pre-publication costs include

the cost to procure rights for the use of content which have been developed by third parties and are to be included in the Company's products. Costs are capitalized when the title is expected to generate probable future economic benefits and are amortized upon publication of the title over its estimated operating life cycle, with a higher proportion of the amortization typically taken in the earlier years. Internal costs that are capitalized represent amounts paid to employees through wages, salaries and salary-related costs. As the Company's business continues to evolve from traditional print to digital, its pre-publication costs continue to decline. The Company continues to evaluate its product portfolio and make strategic decisions as to which titles to invest in. The cost of putting together the initial edition of a print product and subsequent new editions drives the majority of pre-publication spending. Digital products are continuously updated, which results in smaller investments. Minor adjustments to digital products are typically expensed and not capitalized.

The Company periodically evaluates the amortization methods, rates and remaining amortization periods of such costs, which are dependent on its forecast of sales throughout the operating life cycle of the title. The Company also considers current assessments of the industry, industry trends and the projected success of programs. When the Company determines to abandon an asset that is in use, the Company records accelerated amortization through the date of abandonment. When the Company commits to a plan to abandon an asset before the end of its previously estimated useful life, future amortization is revised to reflect the use of the asset over its shortened remaining useful life. An asset to be abandoned is disposed of when it ceases to be used. During fiscal years 2021, 2020, and 2019 the Company recorded accelerated amortization of prepublication costs of approximately \$2.4 million, \$1.9 million, and \$2.9 million, respectively, associated with the abandonment of certain content projects during the fiscal year.

#### ***Author Advances***

Author advances are initially capitalized as assets and subsequently expensed as related revenues are earned or when the Company determines future recovery is not probable. Advances are expensed as revenues from the associated products and services are recognized at the contracted royalty rate and such expenses are recognized as a component of cost of revenues on the consolidated statements of operations.

As part of the ongoing assessment of recoverability, the Company considers the age of the content since publication. The longer the unearned portion of the advance remains outstanding, the less likely it is that the Company will recover the advance through the sale of the publication. The Company considers future sales projections for new authors and prior sales history for recurring authors and monitors the projection of future sales based on the current environment and the author's ability to meet his or her contractual obligations. Based on this information, the portion of any advance that the Company believes to be not recoverable is expensed.

#### ***Identifiable Intangible Assets***

Upon acquisition, identifiable intangible assets are recorded at fair value. Identifiable intangible assets with finite lives are amortized over their estimated useful lives on a straight-line basis. The Company periodically evaluates the amortization methods, rates, and remaining amortization periods of the assets, which are dependent upon the economic useful life of the asset.

Amortization is computed on a straight-line basis over the following estimated useful lives:

Trademarks and tradenames	1–15 years
Copyrights	3–24 years
Customer relationships	3–20 years
Technology	2–8 years
Author content rights	4–25 years

#### ***Goodwill***

Goodwill represents the excess of the Company's reorganization value over the fair value of identifiable tangible and intangible assets upon emergence from Chapter 11 of the United States Bankruptcy Code ("Chapter 11") on March 31, 2014 (the "Effective Date"), as well as the excess purchase price and related costs over the fair value of identifiable assets acquired and liabilities assumed in a business combination.

The Company tests the carrying value of goodwill for impairment at a reporting unit level, annually in the fourth quarter of each fiscal year, and whenever an event occurs or circumstances change that would more likely than not reduce the fair value of a reporting unit below its carrying amount.

Under certain circumstances, the Company may elect to first assess qualitative factors to determine whether it is necessary to perform the quantitative goodwill impairment test. For reporting units in which the qualitative assessment indicates it is more likely than not that the fair value is more than its carrying value, the Company would not be required to perform further quantitative goodwill impairment testing. See Note 7, "Goodwill," for further information related to the Company's goodwill and impairment testing.

#### ***Impairment of Long-Lived Assets***

The Company evaluates long-lived assets for impairment whenever events or changes in circumstances indicate that the carrying amounts of the lowest level asset grouping for which identifiable cash flows are independent of other assets, may not be recoverable. The initial test for impairment compares the asset carrying amounts with the sum of undiscounted cash flows related to that asset grouping. If the carrying value is greater than the undiscounted cash flows, the individual assets are impaired proportionately, limited to their respective carrying values.

#### ***Operational Restructuring, Other Charges and Right-of-Use Asset Impairments***

The Company records a liability for significant costs associated with exit or disposal activities, including certain employee severance costs associated with formal restructuring plans, facility closings or other similar activities and related asset impairments, when the liability is incurred. The determination of when the Company accrues for severance and related costs depends on whether the termination benefits are provided under a one-time benefit arrangement or under an ongoing benefit arrangement. Where the Company has either a formal severance plan or a practice of consistently providing severance benefits, it recognizes severance costs when they are both probable and estimable. Costs associated with restructuring actions that include one-time severance benefits are only recorded once a liability has been incurred, including when management with the proper level of authority has committed to a restructuring plan and the plan has been communicated to employees. These charges are included in operational restructuring and other charges on the consolidated statements of operations. Other charges include knowledge transfer costs and business process reengineering consulting costs that are directly related to the restructuring initiatives and are expensed as incurred. Right-of-use asset impairment charges included on the consolidated statements of operations are related to the Company vacating and ceasing use of certain facilities and floors.

#### ***Legal Contingencies***

From time to time, the Company may become involved in various claims, disputes and legal or regulatory proceedings that arise in the ordinary course of business and relate to contractual and other obligations. The Company assesses its potential contingent and other liabilities by analyzing its claims, disputes and legal and regulatory matters using all available information, and develops its views on estimated losses in consultation with its legal and other advisors. The Company determines whether a loss from a contingency should be accrued by assessing whether a loss is deemed probable and can be reasonably estimated. If the contingency is not probable or cannot be reasonably estimated, disclosure of the contingency shall be made when there is at least a reasonable possibility that a material loss may be incurred. See Note 17, "Commitments and Contingencies," for further information. Proceeds from legal settlements are gain contingencies and are recognized in the income statement when all contingencies have been resolved. As such, gains from legal settlements are recorded once they are received.

#### ***Fair Value Measurements***

Fair value is determined based on the exchange price that would be received for an asset or paid to transfer a liability (an exit price) in the principal market for the asset or liability in an orderly transaction between market participants. Authoritative guidance specifies a hierarchy of valuation techniques based upon whether the inputs to those valuation techniques reflect assumptions other market participants would use based upon market data obtained from independent sources (observable inputs) or reflect the Company's own assumptions of market participant valuation (unobservable inputs). The fair value hierarchy consists of three levels:

Level 1 – Quoted prices in active markets that are unadjusted and accessible at the measurement date for identical, unrestricted assets or liabilities.

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements**

Level 2 – Observable inputs other than Level 1 prices, such as quoted prices for similar assets or liabilities, quoted prices in markets that are not active, or inputs that are observable or can be corroborated by observable market data for substantially the full term of the assets or liabilities.

Level 3 – Unobservable inputs that are supported by little or no market activity and that are significant to the fair value of the assets or liabilities.

The authoritative guidance requires the use of observable market data if such data is available without undue cost and effort. When available, the Company uses unadjusted quoted market prices to measure fair value and classify such items within Level 1. If quoted market prices are not available, fair value is based upon internally developed models that use, where possible, current market-based or independently-sourced market parameters, such as interest and currency rates and comparable transactions. Items valued using internally generated models are classified according to the lowest level input or value driver that is significant to the valuation. Thus, items may be classified in Level 3 even though there may be inputs that are readily observable. If quoted market prices are not available, the valuation model used generally depends on the specific asset or liability being valued.

Some assets and liabilities are required to be recorded at fair value on a recurring basis, while other assets and liabilities are recorded at fair value on a nonrecurring basis. The Company records the fair value of long-lived assets, goodwill and other intangible assets on a nonrecurring basis. The carrying amounts of current financial instruments, which include accounts receivable and accounts payable, approximate their fair values due to the short-term nature of these instruments. The fair value of long-term debt is determined based upon either the most recent quoted market prices, the average bid and ask price or the most recent trade price, provided it was within the prior five trading days, of the Company's debt securities or the use of comparable debt prices of similarly rated public companies.

The Company reviews the carrying value of long-lived assets, goodwill and other intangible assets on an annual basis or whenever events or changes in circumstances indicate the fair value of the asset is below its carrying amount. Fair value is determined using various valuation techniques, including discounted cash flows, market-related multiples, and recently reported transactions for similar assets in the market place.

See Note 15, "Fair Value Measurements," for additional detail on the fair value hierarchy.

### ***Equity-Based Compensation***

The Company accounts for awards granted under its equity-based compensation plan using the grant date fair value recognition provisions of authoritative guidance for share-based payments. See Note 13, "Equity-Based Compensation," for further information related to the plans and awards.

### ***Foreign Currency***

The functional currencies of certain foreign operations have been determined to be the respective local currencies of those foreign locations. Balance sheet accounts of these foreign operations are translated from foreign currencies into the reporting currency (United States dollar) at period-end exchange rates, while revenues and expenses are translated at average exchange rates during the period. Translation adjustments resulting from differences between period-end and average exchange rates when translating functional currency financial statements into the reporting currency are recorded as a separate component of accumulated other comprehensive loss. Remeasurement adjustments are recorded in other income (expense), net, below operating income (loss) when the United States dollar, and not the local currency, is the functional currency. Currency gains or losses arising from transactions denominated in a currency other than the functional currency are recorded in other (expense) income, net, below operating income (loss) and were as follows:

	Fiscal Year Ended March 31,		
	2021	2020	2019
(in millions)			
Foreign currency transaction (losses) gains, net	\$ (6.9)	\$ 3.1	\$ 2.1

### ***Taxes Collected from Customers and Remitted to Governmental Agencies***

The Company records taxes on customer transactions due to governmental agencies as a receivable and a liability on the consolidated balance sheets.

### ***Income Taxes***

Significant judgment is required in determining the Company's annual provision for income taxes and evaluating its income tax positions. The Company's tax rates are impacted by the tax laws, regulations and policies in federal, state and local and international territories where its businesses operate. Changes to these laws and regulations and uncertainty generated by the prospect of future tax legislation may also affect the Company's income tax positions, in addition to other factors, including its global mix of earnings, acquisitions and dispositions, as well as the tax characteristics of its income. In determining its income tax provisions on a jurisdiction basis, the Company is required to make judgments on the need to record deferred tax assets and liabilities, including the realizability of deferred tax assets. A valuation allowance for deferred tax assets is established if it is more likely than not that a deferred tax asset will not be realized.

In evaluating uncertain tax positions, the Company makes determinations of the application of complex tax rules, regulations and practices. The Company evaluates its uncertain tax positions quarterly based on many factors including, but not limited to, new facts, changes in tax law and information received from regulators. A change in any one of these factors could change the evaluation of an existing uncertain tax position, resulting in the recognition of an additional charge or benefit to the Company's income tax provision, sometimes including applicable interest and penalties, and may result in fluctuations in the Company's effective income tax rate. Additionally, the Company's income tax returns are routinely audited and settlements of issues raised in these audits sometimes affect its income tax provisions. The resolution of audit issues and income tax positions taken may take extended periods of time due to the length of examinations by tax authorities and the possible extension of statutes of limitations.

### ***Accumulated Other Comprehensive Loss***

Accumulated other comprehensive loss consisted of cumulative foreign currency translation adjustments at both March 31, 2021 and 2020.

### ***Merger and Acquisition-Related Costs***

Merger related costs related to the proposed McGraw-Hill merger that was terminated on May 3, 2020 were expensed as incurred, consisted of integration planning costs, legal fees, rating agency fees, and professional services and were \$1.3 million, \$44.1 million and \$6.8 million for the fiscal years ended March 31, 2021, 2020, and 2019, respectively. Acquisition-related costs for the acquisition of certain Nelson Canada assets were expensed as incurred and consisted of legal fees and technology integration costs and were \$1.2 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2021.

### ***New Accounting Standards and Accounting Changes***

#### ***Issued Accounting Standards Not Yet Adopted***

In March 2020, the Financial Accounting Standards Board ("FASB") issued guidance on reference rate reform. The update contains optional expedients for when the London Interbank Offered Rate ("LIBOR") is discontinued. These expedients apply only to contracts, hedging relationships, and other transactions that reference LIBOR or another reference rate expected to be discontinued because of reference rate reform. The guidance allows for prospective treatment of interest rate changes for contract modifications due to reference rate reform. Modification of leases due to reference rate reform should be accounted for as a continuation of the existing contracts with no reassessments of the lease classification and the discount rate or remeasurement of lease payments that otherwise would be required for modifications not accounted for as separate contracts under Topic 840, Leases, and Topic 842, Leases. Modifications of contracts do not require an entity to reassess its original conclusion about whether that contract contains an embedded derivative that is clearly and closely related to the economic characteristics and risks of the host contract under Subtopic 815-15, Derivatives and Hedging-Embedded Derivatives. The amendments in this update are effective for all entities as of March 12, 2020 through December 31, 2022 and can be adopted at the beginning of or prospectively within any interim period including or subsequent to March 12, 2020. Once elected, the amendments must be applied prospectively for all eligible contract modifications. The Company continues to evaluate the impact of this update on its consolidated financial statements.

In December 2019, the FASB issued guidance to simplify the accounting for income taxes by removing certain exceptions to the general principles in Topic 740, Income Taxes. The guidance removes exceptions around deferred tax liability recognition when moving foreign subsidiaries to and from equity method investments. The guidance also removes exceptions for calculating income taxes in interim periods when there is a loss from continuing operations. The amendment also simplifies the accounting for income taxes by clarifying the requirements around franchise taxes, goodwill, legal entities not subject to tax in financial statements, and employee stock ownership plans. In addition, the amendment requires that an

entity reflect the impact of a change in tax laws or rates in the annual effective tax rate computation in the interim period that includes the enactment date. The amendments are effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2021 and interim periods within fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2022. Early adoption of the amendments is permitted, including adoption in any periods for which financial statements have not yet been issued. Additionally, an entity that elects early adoption must adopt all of the amendments in the same period. The amendments are applied on a retrospective basis for financial statements of entities not subject to tax, on a modified retrospective basis for changes in ownership of foreign equity method investments, and on either a retrospective or modified retrospective basis for franchise taxes. All other amendments should be applied on a prospective basis. The adoption of this guidance is not expected to have a material impact on the Company's consolidated financial statements.

### ***Recently Adopted Accounting Standards***

In August 2018, the FASB issued guidance on accounting for implementation costs incurred in a cloud computing arrangement that is a service contract. This update aligns the requirements for capitalizing implementation costs incurred in a hosting arrangement that is a service contract with the requirements for capitalizing implementation costs incurred to develop or obtain internal-use software (and hosting arrangements that include an internal use software license). The amendments in this update are effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2020 and interim periods within fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2021, with early adoption permitted. The Company adopted this guidance on April 1, 2020. The adoption of this guidance did not have a material impact on our consolidated financial statements.

In June 2016, the FASB issued guidance and an update to add Accounting Standard Codification ("ASC") Topic 326, Credit Losses. There was a subsequent amendment in November 2018 to amend and clarify the initial guidance, and in November 2019 to defer the effective date for all entities by an additional year. Topic 326 requires measurement and recognition of expected credit losses for financial assets held. Under this model, entities will be required to estimate the lifetime expected credit loss on such instruments and record an allowance to offset the amortized cost basis of the financial asset, resulting in a net presentation of the amount expected to be collected on the financial asset. The guidance is effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2022, and interim periods within that fiscal year, with early adoption permitted for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2018. The Company adopted this guidance on April 1, 2020. The adoption of this guidance did not have a material impact on our consolidated financial statements.

In February 2016, the FASB codified ASC Topic Leases (Topic 842) to increase transparency and comparability among organizations related to their leasing arrangements. Topic 842 requires lessees to recognize most leases on their balance sheets, with the exception of short-term leases if a policy election is made, while recognizing lease expense on their income statements in a manner similar to current U.S. GAAP. The guidance also requires entities to disclose key quantitative and qualitative information about its leasing arrangements. During the fiscal year ended March 31, 2021, the Company adopted the new lease standard with an adoption date of April 1, 2019.

To reduce the burden of adoption and ongoing compliance with Topic 842, a number of practical expedients and policy elections are available under the new guidance. The Company elected the "package of practical expedients" permitted under the transition guidance, which among other things, did not require reassessment of whether contracts entered into prior to adoption are or contain leases, and allowed carryforward of the historical lease classification for existing leases. The Company has not elected to adopt the "hindsight" practical expedient, and therefore measured the right-of-use ("ROU") asset and lease liability using the remaining portion of the lease term at adoption on April 1, 2019.

The Company made an accounting policy election under Topic 842 not to recognize ROU assets and lease liabilities for leases with a term of twelve months or less. For all other leases, the Company recognizes ROU assets and lease liabilities based on the present value of lease payments over the lease term at the commencement date of the lease (or April 1, 2019 for existing leases upon the adoption of Topic 842). The ROU assets also include any initial direct costs incurred and lease payments made at or before the commencement date, and are reduced by any lease incentives.

Future lease payments may include fixed rent escalation clauses or payments that depend on an index (such as the consumer price index). Subsequent changes to an index and other periodic market-rate adjustments to base rent are recorded in variable lease expense in the period incurred. Residual value guarantees or payments for terminating the lease are included in the lease payments only when it is probable they will be incurred.

The Company has made an accounting policy election to account for lease and non-lease components in its contracts as a single lease component for all asset classes. The non-lease components typically represent additional services transferred to

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements**

the Company, such as common area maintenance for real estate, which are variable in nature and recorded in variable lease expense in the period incurred.

The Company uses its incremental borrowing rate to determine the present value of lease payments, as the Company's leases do not have a readily determinable implicit discount rate. The incremental borrowing rate is the rate of interest the Company would have to pay to borrow on a collateralized basis over a similar term and amount in a similar economic environment. Judgement is applied in assessing factors such as Company-specific credit risk, lease term, nature and quality of the underlying collateral, currency and economic environment in determining the incremental borrowing rate to apply to each lease.

Adoption of Topic 842 resulted in the recording of additional ROU assets and lease liabilities related to the Company's operating leases of approximately \$89.2 million and \$115.0 million, respectively, at April 1, 2019. The adoption of the new lease standard did not materially impact our consolidated net earnings or consolidated cash flows, and did not result in a cumulative-effect adjustment to the opening balance of retained earnings. See Note 9, "Operational Restructuring, Other Charges and Right-of-Use Asset Impairments," and Note 18, "Leases," for further detail.

## **2. ACQUISITION**

On July 7, 2020, the Company agreed with Nelson Education Ltd. ("Nelson"), its longtime partner in Canada, to terminate Nelson's exclusive distribution rights for Cengage's academic product into the Canadian market and to acquire certain assets and assumed liabilities related to Nelson's Canadian adaptations of our titles. The total purchase consideration was \$8.8 million, consisting of \$5.3 million and \$3.5 million of non-cash and cash considerations, respectively, and was accounted for as a business combination.

The operating results from the acquisition are included in the operating results of the Company's International Higher Education segment from the acquisition date and are not material. The pro forma impact of the acquisition was not significant to the Company's results for any period presented.

As a result of the purchase price allocation, the Company recognized \$3.5 million of goodwill. This is primarily due to the expected synergies from the reversion of distribution rights to Cengage product, and an enhanced overall customer and product proposition from the combination with the adapted product, in the important Canadian market. The transaction was structured as an asset acquisition for tax purposes, and the goodwill created by the transaction is deductible for tax purposes.

A summary of the final purchase price allocation of the identifiable assets acquired and liabilities assumed is as follows:

*(in millions)*

Purchase consideration:

Cash paid at closing	\$ 0.1
Fair value of deferred cash payment <sup>(1)</sup>	3.4
Non-cash consideration <sup>(2)</sup>	5.3
Total purchase consideration	<u>\$ 8.8</u>

Allocation of the purchase consideration:

Deferred tax assets	\$ 0.9
Accounts receivable, net <sup>(3)</sup>	(2.4)
Inventories	2.0
Intangible assets	4.8
Goodwill	3.5
Other non-current assets	0.4
Deferred revenue	(0.4)
Net assets acquired	<u>\$ 8.8</u>

<sup>(1)</sup> Represents cash consideration paid monthly as a percentage of sales. As of March 31, 2021 there are no payments remaining.

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements**

- (2) Includes \$3.8 million of pre-existing and \$1.5 million of prebill master services agreement charges.
- (3) Represents estimated future customer credits associated with future returns on sales made prior to the closing date.

The valuation of the acquired intangible assets is inherently subjective and relies on significant estimates and judgments. The fair value of the intangible assets was derived using the income approach and was based on estimated projections of expected cash flows to be generated by the assets, discounted to the present value at discount rates commensurate with perceived risk. The valuation assumption takes into consideration the Company's estimates of revenue growth projections. The fair values for specifically identifiable intangible assets acquired, by major asset class, are as follows:

<i>(in millions)</i>	<b>Fair Value</b>	<b>Weighted-average amortization period (in years)</b>
Copyrights	\$ 1.6	8
Customer Relationships	3.1	3
Trademarks	0.1	2
	<u>\$ 4.8</u>	<u>5</u>

### 3. REVENUE RECOGNITION

The Company adopted effective April 1, 2018, the principles under the new accounting standard *Revenue from Contracts with Customers: Topic 606* ("ASC 606") related to the recognition of revenue in contracts with customers using the modified retrospective transition method. The new standard was applied only to those contracts not completed as of March 31, 2018. The adoption of ASC 606 did not have an impact to revenue. As allowed under ASC 606, the Company adopted the practical expedient to immediately expense commissions on contracts with durations of twelve months or less. The net impact of the cumulative adjustment to capitalize previously expensed commission costs and the adoption of the practical expedient did not require an adjustment to accumulated deficit.

#### Disaggregation of Revenue

As a result of a change in the segment reporting structure that became effective in the fourth quarter of the fiscal year ended March 31, 2021, refer to Note 19, "Segment Information," for additional details, prior period information has been recast to conform to current presentation. The following tables provide details of revenue from contracts with customers disaggregated by major product types, by segment, by geography and by type of performance obligation:

<i>(in millions)</i>	<b>Fiscal Year Ended March 31, 2021</b>		
	<b>Print<sup>(1)</sup></b>	<b>Digital<sup>(2)</sup></b>	<b>Total</b>
U.S. Higher Education	\$ 117.2	\$ 534.0	\$ 651.2
International Higher Education	100.4	39.7	140.1
Higher Education	<u>217.6</u>	<u>573.7</u>	<u>791.3</u>
Secondary	56.1	75.7	131.8
Workforce Skills	—	44.0	44.0
ELT	37.3	31.6	68.9
Research	26.3	159.2	185.5
Total revenue by segment	<u>337.3</u>	<u>884.2</u>	<u>1,221.5</u>
Corporate Enabling Functions	16.2	—	16.2
Total consolidated revenue by product type	<u>\$ 353.5</u>	<u>\$ 884.2</u>	<u>\$ 1,237.7</u>



**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements**

<b>Fiscal Year Ended March 31, 2020</b>			
<i>(in millions)</i>	<b>Print<sup>(1)</sup></b>	<b>Digital<sup>(2)</sup></b>	<b>Total</b>
U.S. Higher Education	\$ 149.0	\$ 496.2	\$ 645.2
International Higher Education	137.0	37.5	174.5
Higher Education	286.0	533.7	819.7
Secondary Education	70.6	87.4	158.0
Workforce Skills	—	32.4	32.4
ELT	70.2	32.7	102.9
Research	32.7	165.6	198.3
Total revenue by segment	459.5	851.8	1,311.3
Corporate Enabling Functions	15.7	—	15.7
Total consolidated revenue by product type	<u>\$ 475.2</u>	<u>\$ 851.8</u>	<u>\$ 1,327.0</u>

<b>Fiscal Year Ended March 31, 2019</b>			
<i>(in millions)</i>	<b>Print<sup>(1)</sup></b>	<b>Digital<sup>(2)</sup></b>	<b>Total</b>
U.S. Higher Education	\$ 206.1	\$ 502.1	\$ 708.2
International Higher Education	158.6	25.6	184.2
Higher Education	364.7	527.7	892.4
Secondary Education	83.6	86.0	169.6
Workforce Skills	—	29.6	29.6
ELT	70.8	28.0	98.8
Research	36.8	189.2	226.0
Total revenue by segment	555.9	860.5	1,416.4
Corporate Enabling Functions	14.2	—	14.2
Total consolidated revenue by product type	<u>\$ 570.1</u>	<u>\$ 860.5</u>	<u>\$ 1,430.6</u>

<sup>(1)</sup> Includes Corporate Enabling Functions (warehouse and distribution fulfillment services) and consignment rental revenue, which is not material for the Company.

<sup>(2)</sup> Digital includes Ebooks and bundled products.

**Revenue by Geography:<sup>(1)</sup>**

<b>Fiscal Year Ended March 31,</b>			
<i>(in millions)</i>	<b>2021</b>	<b>2020</b>	<b>2019</b>
United States	\$ 1,009.5	\$ 1,037.2	\$ 1,123.3
Europe/Middle East/Africa	61.4	78.2	76.5
Asia Pacific	61.8	76.4	81.5
Australia	52.1	77.6	94.6
Canada	33.3	19.4	18.5
Latin America	19.6	38.2	36.2
Total revenue by geography	<u>\$ 1,237.7</u>	<u>\$ 1,327.0</u>	<u>\$ 1,430.6</u>

<sup>(1)</sup> No individual country other than United States contributed more than 10% of the Company's total revenue during any of the periods presented.

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements**

Revenue Recognized Point in Time and Over Time:

	Fiscal Year Ended March 31,		
	2021	2020	2019
<i>(in millions)</i>			
Revenue recognized at a point in time	\$ 612.6	\$ 765.3	\$ 888.2
Revenue recognized over time	625.1	561.7	542.4
Total revenue	<u>\$ 1,237.7</u>	<u>\$ 1,327.0</u>	<u>\$ 1,430.6</u>

Our revenue recognition is consistent across our segments and primarily driven by product type:

Digital

For digital products that are internally hosted, we recognize revenue over time, as the performance obligation is satisfied over the contractual term of the product. For subscriptions, the performance obligation is satisfied over the life of the subscription. For digital products where content is delivered up-front, or where the product is third-party hosted, revenue is recognized upon delivery of the access codes. Revenue for services such as curriculum development or third-party fulfillment services is recognized as the service is performed. Revenue from online skills solutions is recognized over the average length of the course. Revenue for license and technology fees are recognized upon execution of the license and delivery of the content. For archives and databases, revenue is recognized upon delivery of the content.

Print

For our print products, our performance obligation is typically satisfied upon shipment to the customer.

In addition, revenue is impacted by our reserve for sales returns. We reserve a percentage of our gross sales, based on a review of our historical sales returns experience and our estimate of future returns, by reducing revenue during the period in which it is recognized. The returns are then recorded against the sales returns reserve in the period of receipt.

**Significant Judgments**

Determining whether products and services are considered distinct performance obligations that should be accounted for separately versus together may require significant judgment. In order to be distinct, the customer must be able to benefit from the service on its own or with readily available resources, and the promise to transfer the good or service must be separately identifiable from other goods and services in the contract. For digital products, hosting is considered distinct when it is offered as a separate service. For products where hosting is not offered separately, it is not considered a distinct performance obligation.

Judgments are required to determine the SSP for each distinct performance obligation. When SSP is directly observable, we estimate SSP based upon the historical transaction prices, adjusted for geographic considerations and customer class. In instances where SSP is not directly observable, the Company determines SSP using information that may include market conditions and other observable inputs. The Company may have more than one SSP for individual products and services due to the stratification of those products and services by customers and circumstances. In these instances, the Company may use information such as the size of the customer and geographic region in determining SSP. Determining SSP for performance obligations which the Company never sells separately also requires significant judgment. In estimating the SSP, the Company considers the likely price that would have resulted from established pricing practices had the deliverable been offered separately and the prices a customer would likely be willing to pay.

From time to time, the Company may enter into arrangements with third party suppliers to resell products or services. In such cases, the Company evaluates whether it is the principal (i.e., report revenues on a gross basis) or agent (i.e., report revenues on a net basis). In doing so, the Company first evaluates whether it controls the good or service before it is transferred to the customer. If the Company controls the good or service before it is transferred to the customer, the Company is the principal; if not, it is the agent. Determining whether the Company controls the good or service before it is transferred to the customer may require judgment. Generally, the Company controls a promised good or service before transferring that good or service to the customer and acts as the principal to the transaction. The Company has a limited number of agency relationships, which it accounts for on a net revenue basis.

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements**

**Deferred Commission Costs**

Following our adoption of ASC 606, we are required to capitalize certain internal and third-party contract acquisition costs. The capitalized costs primarily relate to paid commissions. A portfolio approach is used to determine a commission rate for capitalization, as the effects on the financial statements of applying this rate are not expected to differ materially from applying detailed commission plan rates to individual contracts within the portfolio. The Company uses the practical expedient allowed under ASC 606 to immediately expense commission on contracts with durations of twelve months or less.

The Company's total deferred commission costs were reported in the accompanying condensed consolidated balance sheets as follows:

	As of	
	March 31, 2021	March 31, 2020
<i>(in millions)</i>		
Prepaid and other current assets	\$ 2.6	\$ 2.9
Other non-current assets	1.7	1.7
Total deferred commission costs	<u>\$ 4.3</u>	<u>\$ 4.6</u>

The Company recognized amortization expense related to deferred commission costs within the accompanying consolidated statement of operations. During the fiscal years ended March 31, 2021 and 2020, within cost of revenues \$0.1 million was recognized in each of the fiscal years, and within selling, general and administrative expenses \$3.3 million and \$2.4 million, respectively, was recognized. There was no impairment to commission costs capitalized.

**Contract Assets and Contract Liabilities**

Contract assets consist of unbilled receivables that are recorded for contracts with performance obligations that have been satisfied but not yet billed. As of March 31, 2021 and 2020, the Company had no contract assets.

Contract liabilities consist of revenues from our digital and subscription products that are deferred at the time of sale and recognized as the performance obligations are fulfilled, over the term of the subscription or contract. The current and non-current portions of deferred revenue are included in deferred revenue and other non-current liabilities, respectively, in the accompanying condensed consolidated balance sheet as follows:

	As of	
	March 31, 2021	March 31, 2020
<i>(in millions)</i>		
Deferred revenue	\$ 240.7	\$ 216.2
Other non-current liabilities	47.2	38.1
Total deferred revenue	<u>\$ 287.9</u>	<u>\$ 254.3</u>

The change in deferred revenue as of March 31, 2021 was primarily due to new billing and \$211.5 million of revenue recognized during the fiscal year that was included in deferred revenue as of March 31, 2020. The change in deferred revenue as of March 31, 2020 was primarily due to new billing and \$189.1 million of revenue recognized during the fiscal year that was included in deferred revenue as of March 31, 2019.

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements**

**Remaining Performance Obligations**

The remaining performance obligation disclosure provides the aggregate amount of the transaction price yet to be recognized as of the end of the reporting period and an explanation as to when the Company expects to recognize these amounts in revenue. Remaining performance obligation estimates are subject to change and are affected by several factors, including terminations, changes in the scope of contracts and adjustments for currency. The following table includes aggregate estimated revenue of the transaction price allocated to the remaining performance obligation related to customer contracts that are unsatisfied or partially satisfied as of March 31, 2021:

<i>(in millions)</i>	<b>Within One Year</b>	<b>Two to Five Years</b>	<b>Greater than Five Years</b>	<b>Total</b>
Total Revenue	\$ 240.7	\$ 44.5	\$ 2.7	\$ 287.9

**4. INVENTORIES**

Inventories consist of the following:

<i>(in millions)</i>	<b>As of March 31,</b>	
	<b>2021</b>	<b>2020</b>
Work-in-progress	\$ 0.4	\$ 0.4
Finished goods	63.5	88.9
Total inventories	<u>\$ 63.9</u>	<u>\$ 89.3</u>

**5. PROPERTY, EQUIPMENT AND CAPITALIZED INTERNAL-USE SOFTWARE**

Property, equipment and capitalized internal-use software, net consist of the following:

<i>(in millions)</i>	<b>As of March 31,</b>	
	<b>2021</b>	<b>2020</b>
Purchased and internally-developed software	\$ 424.3	\$ 390.2
Computer hardware	42.1	41.5
Leasehold improvements	28.7	33.5
Buildings and building improvements	27.6	27.4
Furniture and equipment	29.0	27.7
Land and land improvements	3.0	3.0
Total property, equipment and capitalized internal-use software, gross	554.7	523.3
Less: Accumulated depreciation and amortization	(433.5)	(381.0)
Total property, equipment and capitalized internal-use software, net	<u>\$ 121.2</u>	<u>\$ 142.3</u>

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements**

**6. IDENTIFIABLE INTANGIBLE ASSETS**

Identifiable intangible assets, net consist of the following:

	As of March 31,			As of March 31,		
	2021			2020		
(in millions)	Cost	Accumulated amortization	Net book value	Cost	Accumulated amortization	Net book value
Copyrights	\$ 731.4	\$ (324.1)	\$ 407.3	\$ 724.1	\$ (284.3)	\$ 439.8
Customer relationships	371.3	(171.6)	199.7	365.5	(145.4)	220.1
Trademarks	230.4	(107.6)	122.8	229.2	(91.7)	137.5
Technology and author content rights	49.6	(17.9)	31.7	45.8	(12.4)	33.4
Total identifiable intangible assets	<u>\$ 1,382.7</u>	<u>\$ (621.2)</u>	<u>\$ 761.5</u>	<u>\$ 1,364.6</u>	<u>\$ (533.8)</u>	<u>\$ 830.8</u>

As of March 31, 2021, estimated annual amortization expense for each of the next five fiscal years is as follows:

(in millions)

**Fiscal Years Ending March 31,**

2022	\$	84.3
2023		82.4
2024		81.1
2025		79.9
2026		78.9

**7. GOODWILL**

The following table shows the changes in carrying amounts of goodwill by segment.

(in millions)	U.S. Higher Education	International Higher Education	Secondary Education	Workforce Skills	ELT	Research	Total
<b>Balance at March 31, 2019</b>	\$ 1,117.7	\$ 42.3	\$ 176.3	\$ 32.1	\$ 56.8	\$ 203.9	\$ 1,629.1
Foreign currency translation and other	—	(1.5)	—	—	(2.0)	(0.8)	(4.3)
Goodwill impairment charges	(729.6)	(4.1)	(28.7)	—	(5.4)	—	(767.8)
<b>Balance at March 31, 2020</b>	\$ 388.1	\$ 36.7	\$ 147.6	\$ 32.1	\$ 49.4	\$ 203.1	\$ 857.0
Foreign currency translation	—	2.6	—	—	3.5	1.4	7.5
Goodwill resulting from acquisition <sup>(1)</sup>	—	3.5	—	—	—	—	3.5
Goodwill impairment charges	—	(6.1)	—	—	(3.6)	—	(9.7)
<b>Balance at March 31, 2021</b>	<u>\$ 388.1</u>	<u>\$ 36.7</u>	<u>\$ 147.6</u>	<u>\$ 32.1</u>	<u>\$ 49.3</u>	<u>\$ 204.5</u>	<u>\$ 858.3</u>

<sup>(1)</sup> Goodwill resulting from acquisition during the fiscal year ended March 31, 2021, was related to our acquisition of certain assets and assumed liabilities related to Nelson's Canadian adaptations of our titles. See Note 2, "Acquisition," for additional information.

*Fiscal Year 2021*

The Company conducts its annual impairment test of goodwill for each reporting unit during the fourth quarter of fiscal year 2021. In order to estimate the fair value of each reporting unit, the Company used an equal-weighted application of the discounted cash flow and market approach methodologies. The discounted cash flow method estimates the value of a reporting unit by calculating the present value of expected future unlevered after-tax free cash flows to be generated by such reporting unit. This methodology requires the use of significant estimates, including discount rates, estimated residual growth rates, and projections of revenue growth and profit margins. The projections underlying the valuation were based on the internal strategic forecasts for each reporting unit. Discount rates were calculated using the capital asset pricing model based on a weighted-average cost of capital of comparable companies. The estimated residual growth rate was developed considering the long-term economic outlook of the industry and geographical region in which each reporting unit operates. The fourth quarter goodwill impairment review discount rate assumptions ranged from 10.5% to 14.5% and residual growth rate assumptions ranged from 1.0% to 4.0%. In addition to the discounted cash flow analysis, the Company performs the market approach, which is a comparison of both trailing and forward financial multiples implied by the estimated reporting unit fair value to a range of multiples of publicly held companies with similar characteristics. If recent merger and acquisition transactions for industry or peer companies are available, the financial multiples implied by the estimated reporting unit fair value are also compared to the range of multiples from such precedent transactions. The Company applies comparable revenue and EBITDA multiples under this methodology as it considers these measures the most relevant to its business. For the annual impairment test performed in the fourth quarter of 2021, the Company applied forward multiples of projected revenues in a range of 0.3x - 2.1x and forward multiples of projected EBITDA in a range of 7.5x - 9.0x.

Based on the quantitative test for the fiscal year 2021 annual impairment tests, the Company concluded that the fair value of the North America reporting unit was less than its respective carrying value, resulting in a goodwill impairment charge of \$9.7 million. This impairment was driven primarily from a reduction in projections due to the higher than expected impact of the COVID-19 pandemic on our previously reported International reportable segment.

During the fourth quarter of fiscal year 2021, subsequent to the completion of the annual impairment test of goodwill, the Company changed its segment reporting structure to better align with the strategic objectives of the Company. The change in the Company's reporting structure resulted in a change in the composition of its reporting units for goodwill impairment testing purposes. The Company determined its new reporting units, effective in the fourth quarter of fiscal year 2021, to be U.S. Higher Education and Milady, comprising the U.S. Higher Education reportable segment, Canada, EMEA, Asia, Latin America and Australia, within the International Higher Education reportable segment, Secondary Education, Workforce Skills and Research, all individual reportable segments, and North America, EMEA, Asia, Latin America and Australia, within the ELT reportable segment. To determine the amount of goodwill within its new reporting units the Company reallocated the goodwill, previously allocated to its former reporting units, to its new reporting units on a relative fair value basis as of March 31, 2021 (refer to Note 19, "Segment Information," for additional details).

As a result of the change in the Company's reporting unit structure, we reallocated goodwill as of March 31, 2021 to our reporting units using a relative fair value approach and we performed a "before and after" test of the reporting units. The Company followed the same methodology, as described above for the annual impairment review, for the impairment review of the new reporting units. The Company's discount rate assumptions ranged from 10.5% to 15.0% and residual growth rate assumptions ranged from 2.0% to 4.0%. The Company applied forward multiples of projected revenues in a range of .5x – 3.25x and forward multiples of projected EBITDA in a range of 8.0x – 13.0x. For this impairment test, the Company concluded that the fair values of the reporting units exceeded their respective carrying values.

*Fiscal Year 2020*

For the Company's fiscal year 2020 annual goodwill impairment review, the reporting units were Higher Ed (representing the academic and skills markets) and School, whom together comprised the Learning reportable segment, the Gale reportable segment, and North America, EMEA (Europe, Middle East and Africa), Asia, Latin America and Australia, within the International reportable segment. The Company performed its annual goodwill impairment testing on its reporting units in the fourth quarter of fiscal year 2020. The Company then determined as of March 31, 2020, the COVID-19 pandemic was a triggering event and performed an additional quantitative test. In order to estimate the fair value of each reporting unit, the Company followed the same methodology as above. The Company's discount rate assumptions ranged from 11.5% to 16.0% and residual growth rate assumptions ranged from 1.0% to 4.0%. The Company applied forward multiples of projected revenues in a range of 0.5x - 2.2x and forward multiples of projected EBITDA in a range of 5.0x - 10.0x.

Based on the quantitative test for the fiscal year 2020 annual impairment tests, the Company concluded that the fair values of Higher Ed, School and North America reporting units were less than their respective carrying values, resulting in a goodwill impairment charge of \$729.6 million, \$28.7 million, and \$9.5 million, respectively. These impairments were driven primarily from a reduction in projections due to the higher-than-expected overall industry decline during the year compared to prior years, as noted in the fourth quarter, compounded with the estimated impact of the COVID-19 pandemic on student enrollments and school budgets. In the fourth quarter of fiscal year 2021, as the result of the change in segment reporting (refer to Note 19, Segment Information), the Company restated the fiscal year 2020 impairments based on the new segment reporting. The full amount of the charge to Higher Ed is now included in U.S. Higher Education. The full amount of the charge to School is now included in Secondary Education. The amount charged to the North America reporting unit was reallocated from the International segment to International Higher Education and ELT.

Total goodwill impairment charges recorded during the fiscal years ended March 31, 2021 and March 31, 2020 were \$9.7 million and \$767.8 million, respectively. There were no goodwill impairment charges recorded during the fiscal year ended March 31, 2019. Accumulated goodwill impairment charges were \$777.5 million and \$767.8 million as of March 31, 2021 and 2020, respectively.

## **8. ACCOUNTS PAYABLE AND ACCRUED EXPENSES**

Accounts payable and accrued expenses consisted of the following:

	<b>As of March 31,</b>	
	<b>2021</b>	<b>2020</b>
<i>(in millions)</i>		
Accounts payable	\$ 94.7	\$ 129.6
Accrued royalties	48.0	51.1
Accrued incentive compensation	64.7	42.8
Accrued employee compensation and related expenses	32.3	22.6
Other accrued expenses	25.7	21.5
Accrued interest payable	32.4	18.1
Total accounts payable and accrued expenses	<u>\$ 297.8</u>	<u>\$ 285.7</u>

## **9. OPERATIONAL RESTRUCTURING, OTHER CHARGES, AND RIGHT-OF-USE ASSET IMPAIRMENTS**

### ***Operational Restructuring and Other Charges***

During the fiscal year ended March 31, 2021, in connection with continued cost structure improvements, the Company incurred \$6.4 million of severance related costs, with related cash payments expected to be made through the fourth quarter of fiscal year 2022. These charges were substantially complete as of March 31, 2021. The Company also incurred \$1.1 million of facility exit costs associated with the traditional office structure and remote work evaluation of the Company's real estate portfolio, which were expensed as incurred. In addition, the Company incurred process reengineering consulting costs of \$1.0 million, which were expensed as incurred.

During the fiscal year ended March 31, 2020, the Company announced a restructuring cost savings initiative designed to streamline operations and improve its cost structure. This initiative includes actions across the Company's segments and its corporate functions, such as streamlining the Company's organizational structure and spending at the functional, business and geographic levels. As a result of this action, the Company incurred cumulative severance related costs totaling \$15.6 million, with the related cash payments that were completed as of March 31, 2021. In addition, the Company recorded facility exit charges of \$1.3 million associated with vacating and ceasing-use of certain office space, which were expensed as incurred.

During the fiscal year ended March 31, 2019, the Company initiated a restructuring program in its U.S. Higher Education segment and Corporate Enabling Functions to streamline operations. In the fiscal years ended March 31, 2020 and 2019, the Company incurred \$0.6 million and \$3.6 million, respectively, and \$4.2 million in the aggregate, of severance related costs in connection with this program, with related cash payments completed as of March 31, 2021. Additionally, as part of this initiative, and prior to the adoption of ASC 842, the Company vacated and ceased use of one of its offices and recorded restructuring charges of \$0.2 million representing the relative portion of remaining future lease payments, net of estimated sublease income, along with other exit costs related to the facility closure, and net of a \$5.0 million non-cash write-off of the related deferred rent and landlord inducement liability.

Also, during the fiscal year ended March 31, 2019, the Company initiated a restructuring program across its segments to continue the alignment of its operations to support the evolution of the changing business models in those segments, including Cengage Unlimited and its customer-focused approach. The Company incurred \$2.2 million and \$8.0 million of severance related costs during the fiscal years ended March 31, 2020 and 2019, respectively, and \$10.2 million in the aggregate in connection with this program. Additionally, the Company incurred \$1.3 million and \$0.6 million of process reengineering consulting costs during the fiscal years ended March 31, 2020 and 2019. These charges are expensed as incurred. As of March 31, 2021, the program was complete.

Also, during the fiscal year ended March 31, 2019, the Company initiated a restructuring program in its Corporate Enabling Functions to streamline its operations. Associated with these actions, the Company incurred cumulative severance related costs of \$1.0 million associated with these actions. This program was completed as of March 31, 2020.

Also, during the fiscal year ended March 31, 2019, the Company initiated a restructuring program in its Research, International Higher Education and ELT segments to better align its operations to current industry conditions and position the business for growth. The Company incurred \$4.5 million of severance related costs associated with these actions. As of March 31, 2020, this program had been completed.

Also, during the fiscal year ended March 31, 2019, prior to the adoption of ASC 842, the Company adjusted its estimated cease use liability on two previously vacated floor and recorded a net \$0.4 million increase in future estimated sublease income.



**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements**

As a result of a change in the segment reporting structure that became effective in the fourth quarter of the fiscal year ended March 31, 2021, refer to Note 19, “Segment Information,” for additional details, prior period information has been recast to conform to current presentation. Operational restructuring and other charges recognized in the consolidated statement of operations by segment were as follows:

	<b>Fiscal Year Ended March 31,</b>		
	<b>2021</b>	<b>2020</b>	<b>2019</b>
<i>(in millions)</i>			
U.S. Higher Education	\$ 1.8	\$ 5.5	\$ 7.7
International Higher Education	2.3	1.1	0.3
Higher Education	4.1	6.6	8.0
Secondary Education	1.6	1.1	0.8
ELT	0.3	—	0.9
Research	0.1	1.3	4.0
Total segment operational restructuring and other charges, net	6.1	9.0	13.7
Corporate Enabling Functions	2.4	12.0	3.8
Total consolidated operational restructuring and other charges, net	8.5	21.0	17.5
Less: non-cash write-offs	—	—	(5.0)
Total charges expected to be settled in cash	<u>\$ 8.5</u>	<u>\$ 21.0</u>	<u>\$ 22.5</u>

The following table summarizes the movements in restructuring reserves included in the accompanying consolidated balance sheets:

	<b>Severance</b>	<b>Process reengineering consulting</b>	<b>Facility Exit and Other<sup>(1)(2)</sup></b>	<b>Total</b>
<i>(in millions)</i>				
Balance at March 31, 2018	\$ 2.7	\$ —	\$ 3.7	\$ 6.4
Charges, net	17.1	0.6	(0.2)	17.5
Accretion Expense	—	—	0.2	0.2
Cash Payments	(9.8)	(0.6)	(1.7)	(12.1)
Non-cash write-offs <sup>(3)</sup>	—	—	5.0	5.0
Balance at March 31, 2019	\$ 10.0	\$ —	\$ 7.0	\$ 17.0
Charges, net	18.4	1.3	1.3	21.0
Cash Payments	(24.0)	(1.3)	(1.0)	(26.3)
Lease adoption adjustments <sup>(1)</sup>	—	—	(7.2)	(7.2)
Balance at March 31, 2020	\$ 4.4	\$ —	\$ 0.1	\$ 4.5
Charges, net	6.4	1.0	1.1	8.5
Cash Payments	(6.0)	(1.0)	(1.0)	(8.0)
Balance at March 31, 2021	<u>\$ 4.8</u>	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$ 0.2</u>	<u>\$ 5.0</u>

<sup>(1)</sup> With the adoption of ASC 842 on April 1, 2019 charges related to the vacating and ceasing-use of leased facilities are no longer recorded as restructuring charges (refer to Note 18, “Leases,” for additional details on adoption of ASC 842). Associated lease termination and facility exit costs continue to be evaluated under ASC 420, “Exit of Disposal Cost Obligations.”

<sup>(2)</sup> For the fiscal years ended March 31, 2021 and 2020, after the adoption of ASC 842, charges relate to facility exit costs for properties that were vacated and these charges were expensed as incurred.

<sup>(3)</sup> Represents write-offs of landlord inducement liabilities in connection with facility and lease exit activities.

The Company’s total restructuring liability as of March 31, 2021 and 2020 was recorded in other current liabilities.

***Right-of-Use Asset Impairments***

The Company evaluates long-lived assets for impairment whenever events or changes in circumstances indicate that the carrying amount of an asset may not be recoverable. If the sum of the undiscounted expected future cash flows is less than the carrying amount of the asset, the Company recognizes an impairment loss. Impairment losses are measured as the amount by which the carrying amount of the asset exceeds the fair value of the asset. When fair values are not available, the Company estimates fair value using the expected future cash flows discounted at a rate commensurate with the risks associated with the recovery of the asset.

The Company considers factors such as decreases in market prices, changes in the manner in which the floor is being used or physical condition, changes in legal factors or business climate, accumulations of costs significantly in excess of the amount originally expected, a current period operating or cash flow loss combined with a history of operating or cash flow losses or a projection that demonstrates continuing losses, changes in the expected utilization of an asset, and significant declines in stock price or fair value. For purposes of recognizing and measuring impairment of long-lived leasing assets, the Company considers the individual floor of a real estate building as the lowest level for which cash flows are identifiable. Assets being tested for recoverability include the related tangible long-lived assets and right-of-use assets for leased floors.

During the fiscal years ended March 31, 2021 and 2020, the Company vacated and ceased use of multiple properties and recorded impairment charges totaling \$7.7 million and \$2.7 million, respectively. For purposes of calculating impairment on right-of-use assets the Company uses Level 3 inputs as defined in the fair value hierarchy (refer to Note 1, “Basis of Presentation and Summary of Significant Accounting Policies,”).

**10. DEBT**

Debt, related maturities and interest rates were as follows as of March 31, 2021 and 2020:

		Interest Rate at			
		March 31,		March 31,	
(in millions)	Maturity	2021	2020	2021	2020
Current portion:					
Term Loan	2023	5.25%	5.25%	\$ 39.4	\$ 17.1
ABL Facility <sup>(1)</sup>	2023		2.36%	—	50.0
Total current portion of long-term debt				39.4	67.1
Non-current portion:					
Senior Notes	2024	9.50%	9.50%	620.0	620.0
Term Loan	2023	5.25%	5.25%	1,589.4	1,628.8
Unamortized Term Loan discount				(5.3)	(7.8)
Unamortized deferred financing costs				(11.5)	(16.1)
Total non-current portion of long-term debt				2,192.6	2,224.9
Total debt				\$ 2,232.0	\$ 2,292.0

<sup>(1)</sup> See “ABL Facility” for additional maturity details.

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements**

Scheduled principal payments due on the Company's debt as of March 31, 2021 are as follows:

(in millions)

**Fiscal Years Ending March 31,**

2022	\$ 39.4
2023 <sup>(1)</sup>	—
2024	1,589.4
2025	620.0
Total	<u>\$ 2,248.8</u>

<sup>(1)</sup> Based on the Company's fiscal year 2021 prepayment due under the Excess Cash Flow provision, there are no payments due in fiscal year 2023. See "Term Loan" for additional prepayment details.

On June 7, 2016, Cengage Learning, Inc., a wholly owned subsidiary of the Company, issued senior notes ("Senior Notes") and amended and restated its senior secured term loan facility ("Term Loan") and its asset-based lending revolving line of credit ("2016 ABL Facility").

In February 2017, the Company's board of directors approved an authorization of up to \$100 million to purchase in the open market its 9.50% senior notes and/or senior secured term loan.

On October 29, 2020, the Company, entered into Amendment No. 1 ("2020 ABL Facility Amendment") to the 2016 ABL Facility (as amended by the 2020 ABL Facility Amendment, the "ABL Facility"). In connection with the 2020 ABL Facility Amendment, the Company incurred fees with the arrangers, along with legal and other professional costs of approximately \$1.7 million, which was included in other non-current assets in the accompanying consolidated balance sheet.

**Senior Notes**

On June 7, 2016, Cengage Learning, Inc. issued \$620.0 million aggregate principal amount of Senior Notes in a private placement, maturing June 15, 2024. The notes bear interest at a rate of 9.50% per annum, payable semi-annually in arrears on June 15 and December 15 of each year, commencing on December 15, 2016. The Company has the option to redeem the Senior Notes, at any time, at certain redemption prices as defined in the indenture. In addition, the Company may repurchase the Senior Notes in part, at any time, in the open market, in accordance with federal securities regulations.

The indenture related to the Senior Notes contains certain covenants that the Company may be subject to which restrict its and its subsidiaries' ability to, among other things: incur additional indebtedness or issue certain disqualified shares and preferred shares; create liens; pay dividends or distributions or redeem or repurchase equity; prepay subordinated debt or make certain investments; transfer and sell assets; engage in a consolidation or merger or sell, transfer or otherwise dispose of all or substantially all of its assets; and enter into transactions with affiliates. The Company will not be subject to these covenants if (i) the Senior Notes have Investment Grade Ratings from the relevant rating agencies, as defined in the terms of the Senior Notes, and (ii) no default has occurred and is continuing under the indenture. As of March 31, 2021, no default has occurred and the Company is compliant with all of the covenants of the indenture.

**Term Loan**

The Term Loan provides for senior secured term loans in an aggregate principal amount of \$1,710.0 million and matures on June 7, 2023. In addition, the Company may request one or more incremental credit facilities in an aggregate amount of up to \$500.0 million, plus additional amounts subject to certain requirements. Borrowings under the Term Loan bear interest at a rate equal to, at the Company's option, either (a) a LIBOR rate determined by reference to the costs of funds for Eurodollar deposits for the interest period relevant to such borrowing, adjusted for certain additional costs, subject to a 1.00% floor ("Eurocurrency Rate Loan"), or (b) a base rate determined by reference to the highest of (i) the federal funds rate plus 0.50%, (ii) the prime rate and (iii) the one-month adjusted LIBOR rate plus 1.00%, in each case plus an applicable margin. As of March 31, 2021, the Company elected to carry the Term Loan as a Eurocurrency Rate Loan with an effective interest rate of 5.25%.

The Company is required to repay 0.25% of the original principal amount of the Term Loan on the last business day of each quarter. Following the end of each fiscal year, commencing with the fiscal year ending March 31, 2017, the Company

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements**

must prepay a percentage between 0% and 50%, based on its total leverage ratio, of its Excess Cash Flow, as defined in the Term Loan agreement, within five business days after delivery of the financial statements. Based on the Company's consolidated financial statements as of March 31, 2021, the Company calculated the prepayment due under the Excess Cash Flow provision was approximately \$39.4 million, which was reclassified to the current portion of long-term debt on the March 31, 2021, consolidated balance sheet. Prepayments made under the Excess Cash Flow provision are used to satisfy prospective mandatory quarterly principal repayments. The Company is also required to prepay loans with net proceeds from asset sales, casualty events, or issuances of indebtedness, subject to, in the case of asset sales and casualty events, reinvestment rights by the Company within certain time restrictions. Based on the Company's consolidated financial statements as of March 31, 2020 and 2019, respectively, the Company determined there were no prepayments due under the Excess Cash Flow provision in fiscal years 2020 and 2019, respectively.

***ABL Facility***

The availability of credit under the ABL Facility, of which, (x) \$206.5 million in aggregate principal expires on October 29, 2023 (or 91 days prior to June 7, 2023, if any term loans and pursuant to the Term Loan are then outstanding) ("2020 Extended Revolving Credit Facility") and (y) \$18.5 million in aggregate principal expires on June 7, 2021 ("2020 Non-Extended Revolving Credit Facility"), is equal to the lesser of (i) \$225.0 million and (ii) the Company's borrowing base. The borrowing base equals the sum of (i) 90% of eligible credit card receivables, plus (ii) 85% of eligible receivables, plus (iii) 85% of the orderly liquidation value of eligible inventory, plus (iv) 100% of cash not to exceed \$35.0 million. During the fiscal year ended March 31, 2021, the Company repaid borrowings of \$50 million under the ABL Facility, and as of March 31, 2021 there were no outstanding borrowings under the ABL Facility. In addition, as of March 31, 2021 and March 31, 2020, the ABL Facility had \$10.6 million and \$10.7 million, respectively, in issued and outstanding letters of credit. The Company's available borrowing base, as of March 31, 2021, which is based on the balance sheet at February 28, 2021, was \$87.6 million, net of letters of credit. The ABL Facility has a fixed charge coverage ratio covenant if availability falls below a defined threshold. Based on availability under the ABL Facility as of March 31, 2021, the Company was not subject to the covenant.

The unused commitment fee on the 2020 Non-Extended Revolving Credit Facility will range between 0.25% and 0.375%, based upon the average facility usage for the most recently ended fiscal quarter and on the 2020 Extended Revolving Credit Facility the unused committee fee will be a fixed rate of 0.50%. Depending on the average daily availability outstanding letters of credit are also subject to a quarterly letter of credit participation fee which will vary between 1.75% and 2.25% on the 2020 Non-Extended Revolving Credit Facility and will vary between 2.25% and 2.75% on the 2020 Extended Revolving Credit Facility. During the fiscal year ended March 31, 2021 the Company incurred approximately \$0.9 million of unused commitment fees and \$0.2 million of letter of credit participation fees.

## **11. BENEFIT PLANS**

The Company maintains a defined contribution 401(k) Savings Plan in the United States. The United States plan covers substantially all United States based employees who meet minimum age and service requirements and allows participants to defer a portion of their annual compensation on a pre-tax or post-tax basis. The Company does a discretionary match of 100% of employee contributions up to 4% of the employee's compensation, as defined in the plan. In May 2020, as part of the Company's cost savings efforts in response to the COVID-19 pandemic, the Company temporarily suspended its matching contribution. In January 2021, the Company reinstated its matching contribution. These matching contributions vest based upon an employee's years of service and become fully vested after four years of service. The Company also has similar defined contribution plans for certain employees outside the United States. The Company's contributions to all plans, net of plan forfeitures, were \$4.7 million, \$13.2 million, and \$13.8 million for the fiscal years ended March 31, 2021, 2020 and 2019, respectively.

## **12. EQUITY**

Pursuant to the Company's Certificate of Incorporation, the Company is authorized to issue an aggregate of 350,000,000 shares of capital stock, of which 300,000,000 shares were designated as common stock and 50,000,000 shares designated as preferred stock, each class having a par value of \$0.01. Holders of common stock are entitled to one vote per share on all matters to be voted upon by stockholders and shall vote together as a single class. The Company's board of directors is authorized to issue shares of one or more series of preferred stock and establish the designation, powers, preferences, and rights of the shares of each series and any qualifications, limitations, or restrictions thereof. As of March 31, 2021, the Company has not issued any shares of preferred stock.

### ***Equity Purchase Plan***

The Company adopted an equity purchase plan during fiscal year 2015 (the “Equity Purchase Plan”) which allows the compensation committee of its board of directors to designate directors, officers and employees of Cengage to purchase newly issued equity securities for fair value based on the Company’s reorganization value on the Effective Date. The sale of these securities is not intended to raise capital for Cengage. Rather, the purpose of the plan is to provide additional opportunities to further align the interests of the Company’s directors, officers and employees with the interests of its shareholders. As the shares are issued at fair value, the Company considers the Equity Purchase Plan to be non-compensatory. The compensation committee may impose certain sale and transfer restrictions on securities purchased under the Equity Purchase Plan. The board of directors authorized 100,000 shares of the Company’s common stock to be reserved for issuance under the Equity Purchase Plan. There were no shares issued under the Equity Purchase Plan in the fiscal years ended March 31, 2021, 2020, and 2019. As of March 31, 2021, 24,000 shares remain available for issuance under the Equity Purchase Plan.

### ***Dividends***

There were no dividends declared in the fiscal years ended March 31, 2021 and 2020. We may declare cash dividends in the future.

### ***Purchases of Company Common Stock***

Since December 2014, the Company’s board of directors has authorized the Company to repurchase up to \$290.0 million of the Company’s outstanding common stock under share repurchase programs. The shares could be repurchased from time to time over the twelve months following the authorization in accordance with federal securities laws. All of these programs have been completed and the repurchased shares were retired and returned to the status of authorized but unissued.

In addition, the Company also repurchases shares from certain employees in order to satisfy employee tax withholding requirements in connection with the vesting of restricted stock units and delivery of shares. During the fiscal years ended March 31, 2021, 2020 and 2019, the Company spent \$0.7 million, \$2.0 million, and \$7.8 million, respectively, to acquire shares in connection with net settlement of equity-based awards.

## **13. EQUITY-BASED COMPENSATION**

### ***Share-based compensation plans***

#### ***2014 Cengage Learning Equity Incentive Plan***

On the Effective Date, the Company adopted the 2014 Cengage Learning Equity Incentive Plan (the “2014 Equity Incentive Plan”). The 2014 Equity Incentive Plan was approved by the Bankruptcy Court and the Company’s Board of Directors and is administered by the Compensation Committee to the board of directors. Directors, officers, and employees of the Company were eligible to receive awards under the 2014 Equity Incentive Plan. The awards could be granted in the form of incentive stock options (“ISOs”), non-qualified stock options (“NQSOs”), restricted stock units (“RSUs”), restricted stock, stock appreciation rights or performance awards. Upon the occurrence of a change in capital structure, as defined by the 2014 Equity Incentive Plan, the board of directors is required to modify affected awards to preserve their value, including adjusting the number of shares for awards then outstanding or to be granted, adjusting the exercise price (or base price in the case of stock appreciation rights), or providing for an immediate cash payment to the holders of awards in consideration for cancellation of the awards.

Stock options vest in 25% increments annually on the last day of the first four fiscal years following the grant date, and expire seven years after the date of grant. RSUs vest in 20% increments annually on the last day of the first five fiscal years following the grant date. Shares are delivered to the RSU recipients upon the earliest of a change in control, as defined in the 2014 Equity Incentive Plan; termination, to the extent vested; or 50% on the fourth anniversary of the date of grant and the remaining 50% on the fifth anniversary. The Company recognizes equity-based compensation expense on a straight-line basis over the applicable vesting period.

#### ***2018 Cengage Learning Equity Incentive Plan***

Effective as of November 15, 2018, the Company’s Board of Directors and the majority shareholders adopted an equity incentive plan (the “2018 Equity Incentive Plan”). The 2018 Equity Incentive Plan is administered by the Compensation

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements**

Committee of the Board of Directors. The plan provides for the grant of incentive stock options (the “ISOs”), certain other options, restricted stock units (the “RSUs”), restricted stock, and other stock-based awards to directors, officers, and employees of the Company. Upon the occurrence of a change in capital structure, as defined by the 2018 Equity Incentive Plan, the Board of Directors is required to modify affected awards to preserve their value, including adjusting the number of shares for awards then outstanding or to be granted, adjusting the exercise price, or modifying applicable financial or other performance targets. Upon the occurrence of change in control, as defined by the 2018 Equity Incentive Plan, the Company has the authority to cancel affected awards and pay to each affected 2018 Equity Incentive Plan participant a cash amount equivalent to the award’s fair value. Following the approval of the 2018 Equity Incentive Plan, the Company does not intend to grant any additional awards under the 2014 Equity Incentive Plan.

The awards under the 2018 Equity Incentive Plan vest upon meeting two (2) requirements: the service requirement is satisfied in 25% increments on the last day of the first four fiscal years following the grant date and the performance condition is satisfied upon a liquidity event in the form of either a change of control or initial public offering, in either case occurring prior to the sixth anniversary of the grant date. See below for additional details on the performance-based stock options and performance-based RSUs.

*Shares Available for Grant or Issuance*

As of March 31, 2021, there were approximately a total of 0.8 million shares currently available for grant in respect of awards under the 2018 Equity Incentive Plan. In addition, as of March 31, 2021, under the 2014 Equity Incentive Plan, there were approximately awards of 3.1 million shares of stock options, performance-based RSUs and RSUs outstanding. Should the 3.1 million shares again become available for grant, the shares would be available for grant under the 2018 Equity Incentive Plan.

*Modification of Awards*

On February 1, 2021, the Company modified certain non-vested performance-based stock options and RSUs under the 2018 Equity Incentive Plan to become only time-based service requirement awards and removed the performance-based requirement for vesting. This modification resulted in immediate vesting of certain awards and approximately \$2.0 million of equity-based compensation to be recognized. In addition, the Company modified certain options outstanding under the 2014 Equity Incentive Plan to extend their expiration date from seven years to ten years from the date of grant. As a result of these modifications, the Company recognized \$2.1 million of expense immediately and added incremental equity-based compensation expense to be recognized over the remaining service period.

Presented below is a summary of the compensation cost recognized in selling, general and administrative expenses, excluding depreciation in the Consolidated Statements of Operations:

	Fiscal Year Ended March 31,		
	2021	2020	2019
<i>(in millions)</i>			
Restricted stock units	\$ 2.2	\$ 3.5	\$ 6.9
Stock options	4.7	1.9	1.5
Equity-based compensation expense	<u>\$ 6.9</u>	<u>\$ 5.4</u>	<u>\$ 8.4</u>

The Company did not record any expense related to its 2018 Equity Incentive Plan non-vested performance-based awards during the fiscal years ended March 31, 2020 and 2019, as it was not probable that the performance condition would be met. See above, Modification of Awards, for expense associated with modification of awards in fiscal year 2021.

*Stock Units*

The following table summarizes the weighted-average grant date fair value of RSUs and performance-based RSUs granted under our equity-based compensation plans in the periods presented:

	Fiscal Year Ended March 31,		
	2021	2020	2019
Weighted-average grant date fair value	\$ 8.03	\$ 17.86	\$ 17.33

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements**

The following table summarizes the RSU and performance-based RSU activity under our equity-based compensation plans:

	<b>Shares</b>	<b>Weighted-Average Grant Date Fair Value</b>
Non-vested as of March 31, 2020	582,957	\$ 17.18
Granted	393,122	8.03
Vested	(157,173)	13.57
Forfeited	(38,887)	17.27
Non-vested as of March 31, 2021	<u>780,019</u>	<u>\$ 11.12</u>

The fair value of RSUs vested in fiscal years ended March 31, 2021, 2020, and 2019 was approximately \$1.3 million, \$4.0 million and \$7.5 million, respectively.

Total unrecognized compensation costs related to the 2014 Equity Incentive Plan and 2018 Equity Incentive Plan non-vested RSUs as of March 31, 2021 was \$5.0 million, which is expected to be recognized over a weighted-average period of 3.1 years. Total unrecognized compensation cost related to the 2014 Equity Incentive Plan non-vested performance-based RSUs as of March 31, 2021 was \$3.0 million. No compensation cost related to the performance-based RSUs will be recognized until it is probable that the performance condition will be met.

*Stock Options*

The following table summarizes the weighted-average grant date fair value of stock options granted under our equity-based compensation plans in the periods presented as well as the weighted average of the applicable assumptions used to value the stock options:

	<b>Fiscal Year Ended March 31,</b>		
	<b>2021</b>	<b>2020</b>	<b>2019</b>
Weighted-average grant date fair value	\$ 4.22	\$ 6.74	\$ 6.57
Weighted-average assumptions:			
Risk-free interest rate	0.4 %	2.5 %	2.6 %
Dividend yield	0.0 %	0.0 %	0.0 %
Expected volatility	65.0 %	40.0 %	40.0 %
Expected life (years)	4.75	4.75	4.75

The following table summarizes the stock option activity under our equity-based compensation plans:

	<b>Shares</b>	<b>Weighted-Average Exercise Price</b>
Outstanding at March 31, 2020	4,157,982	\$ 18.03
Granted	2,797,962	8.03
Forfeitures and cancellations	(359,186)	17.17
Outstanding as of March 31, 2021	<u>6,596,758</u>	<u>\$ 13.83</u>
Vested and exercisable at March 31, 2021	<u>3,016,539</u>	<u>\$ 18.24</u>

As of March 31, 2021, vested and non-vested stock options outstanding have a weighted-average remaining contractual life of 4.0 and 5.7 years, respectively. The intrinsic value of a stock option is the amount by which the current market value of the underlying stock exceeds the exercise price of the option as of the balance sheet date. The intrinsic value of options outstanding, options vested and expected to vest, and options exercisable was zero at March 31, 2021. The intrinsic value of

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements**

options outstanding, options vested and expected to vest, and options exercisable was \$1.1 million, \$1.1 million and \$0.6 million as of March 31, 2020, respectively. Total unrecognized compensation costs related to our equity-based compensation plans non-vested stock options as of March 31, 2021 was \$13.0 million, which is expected to be recognized over a weighted-average period of 3.6 years.

#### 14. INCOME TAXES

The components of loss before taxes by jurisdiction are as follows:

<i>(in millions)</i>	Fiscal Year Ended March 31,		
	2021	2020	2019
United States	\$ (98.6)	\$ (931.0)	\$ (178.8)
Other jurisdictions	1.0	33.9	39.0
Loss before taxes	<u>\$ (97.6)</u>	<u>\$ (897.1)</u>	<u>\$ (139.8)</u>

The (provision for) benefit from income taxes by jurisdiction is as follows:

<i>(in millions)</i>	Fiscal Year Ended March 31,		
	2021	2020	2019
Current:			
United States—Federal	\$ (1.0)	\$ (1.6)	\$ (1.3)
United States—State	(0.6)	0.3	(0.1)
Other jurisdictions	<u>(6.8)</u>	<u>(12.6)</u>	<u>(10.9)</u>
Total current	<u>(8.4)</u>	<u>(13.9)</u>	<u>(12.3)</u>
Deferred:			
United States—Federal	(0.3)	15.9	36.0
United States—State	(7.1)	(15.8)	6.6
Other jurisdictions	<u>3.3</u>	<u>2.0</u>	<u>1.0</u>
Total deferred	<u>(4.1)</u>	<u>2.1</u>	<u>43.6</u>
(Provision for) benefit from income taxes	<u>\$ (12.5)</u>	<u>\$ (11.8)</u>	<u>\$ 31.3</u>



**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements**

The cumulative tax effects of significant temporary differences giving rise to deferred tax assets and liabilities are as follows:

<i>(in millions)</i>	As of March 31,	
	2021	2020
Deferred tax assets:		
Net operating losses	\$ 253.3	\$ 212.3
Accrued expenses and reserves	46.8	36.4
Merger-related costs	—	9.7
Author advances	9.4	9.3
Deferred revenue	10.8	8.7
Research and development credit carryforwards	6.2	6.9
Lease liability	18.4	20.1
Pre-publication costs	3.2	3.6
Equity compensation	5.3	3.5
Fixed assets	7.3	1.1
Other	2.2	2.2
Total deferred tax assets	362.9	313.8
Deferred tax liabilities:		
Intangibles	(234.3)	(210.3)
Right-of-use asset	(12.8)	(16.2)
Other	(2.1)	(1.5)
Total deferred tax liabilities	(249.2)	(228.0)
Net deferred tax asset	113.7	85.8
Less: Valuation allowance	(140.7)	(111.0)
Total net deferred tax liability	\$ (27.0)	\$ (25.2)

On March 27, 2020 the Coronavirus Aid, Relief, and Economic Security Act (the “CARES Act”) was enacted and signed into law. The CARES Act includes several tax related provisions that benefit corporations, including increasing the amount of deductible interest, allowing companies to carryback certain net operating losses (“NOLs”) and increasing the amount of NOLs that corporations can use to offset income. As a result of the CARES Act, the Company was able to increase its fiscal year 2021 interest deduction by \$22.4 million.

As of March 31, 2021, the Company had estimated federal NOL carryforwards of \$964.3 million that will begin to expire in 2035 if not utilized and estimated state NOL carryforwards of \$1,145.8 million that will begin to expire in 2029 if not utilized. In addition, the Company estimated its federal and state research and development income tax credit carryforwards to be \$6.2 million for tax years ended March 31, 2015 through March 31, 2021, which will begin to expire in 2030 if not utilized. These NOL and research and development income tax credit carryforwards can be used to offset taxable income in future periods and reduce the Company’s income taxes payable in those future periods.

The Company records valuation allowances against deferred tax assets when it determines that it is more likely than not based upon all available evidence, both positive and negative, that such deferred tax assets will not be realized. Given the Company is in a three year cumulative loss, Management considered future taxable income in the form of reversals of existing temporary differences as a source of positive evidence. After evaluation, Management determined it more likely than not that a portion of the Company’s U.S. deferred tax assets would not be realizable. As a result, the Company recorded a valuation allowance on a portion of its federal and state deferred tax assets. The Company has also recorded valuation allowances on certain deferred tax assets which are primarily related to net operating losses in foreign jurisdictions as it is more likely than not that these assets will not be realized.

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements**

Utilization of the U.S. federal and state NOL carryforwards may be subject to a substantial annual limitation under Section 382 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, and corresponding provisions of state law, due to ownership changes that have occurred previously or that could occur in the future. These ownership changes may limit the amount of NOL carryforwards that can be utilized annually to offset future taxable income and tax liabilities, respectively. The Company has not completed a formal study to assess whether a change of ownership has occurred, or whether there have been multiple ownership changes since its formation, due to the significant cost and complexity associated with such a study. Any limitation may result in expiration of a portion of the NOL carryforwards before utilization.

The Company has not made any provisions for foreign withholding or income taxes on the undistributed earnings of its foreign subsidiaries since it is the Company's intention to indefinitely reinvest undistributed earnings of its foreign subsidiaries. Based on the Company's historical earnings, management believes that any changes to its assertion to permanently reinvest the earnings of the Company's foreign subsidiaries would not have a material impact on the Company's tax provision.

Reconciliation of income taxes from the U.S. statutory rate of 21.0% to the consolidated effective tax rate is as follows:

	Fiscal Year Ended March 31,		
	2021	2020	2019
<i>(in millions)</i>			
Benefit at the statutory rate	\$ 20.5	\$ 188.4	\$ 29.4
State taxes, net of federal benefit	3.9	37.4	5.4
Return-to-provision adjustments	(0.2)	4.3	0.2
Non-deductible goodwill impairment	(1.9)	(129.3)	—
Change in valuation allowance	(29.8)	(106.7)	1.6
Withholding tax	(3.9)	(4.2)	(2.7)
Foreign tax rate differential	0.3	(1.6)	(2.2)
Change in tax rate	(2.4)	—	—
Other	1.0	(0.1)	(0.4)
(Provision) benefit at the effective income tax rate	<u>\$ (12.5)</u>	<u>\$ (11.8)</u>	<u>\$ 31.3</u>

There was no unrecognized tax benefit ("UTB") balance for the fiscal years ended March 31, 2021, 2020 and 2019.

There was no expense or benefit related to UTBs during the fiscal years ended March 31, 2021, 2020 and 2019 and no accrued interest and penalties.

The Company's income tax returns are currently under examination in some foreign jurisdictions. The Company is no longer subject to U.S. federal tax examinations for the tax year ended March 31, 2017, and state tax examinations for the tax year ended March 31, 2016, all preceding tax years and, with limited exceptions, for periods preceding 2013 for foreign tax examinations.

## **15. FAIR VALUE MEASUREMENTS**

### ***Recurring Measurements***

As of March 31, 2021 and 2020, the Company had no assets and liabilities measured at fair value on a recurring basis.

### ***Non-Recurring Measurements***

Non-financial assets and liabilities, which include goodwill, identifiable intangible assets, property and equipment, capitalized internal-use software, net, right-of-use assets and various liabilities, are not required to be measured at fair value on a recurring basis. However, if an impairment test is required, the Company evaluates the non-financial assets and liabilities for impairment. If impairment is determined to have occurred, the asset or liability is required to be written down to its estimated fair value. During fiscal years 2021, 2020 and 2019, the Company did not recognize any impairments of its non-financial assets and liabilities, except for certain leases as disclosed in Note 9, "Operational Restructuring, Other Charges and Right-of-Use Asset Impairments," and goodwill disclosed in Note 7, "Goodwill."

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements**

***Other Fair Value Disclosures***

In addition to fair value disclosure requirements related to financial instruments carried at fair value, accounting standards require disclosures regarding the fair value of all of the Company's financial instruments. The carrying amount and estimated fair value of long-term debt was as follows:

	As of March 31, 2021		As of March 31, 2020	
	Carrying Amount	Fair Value	Carrying Amount	Fair Value
(in millions)				
Senior Notes <sup>(1)</sup>	\$ 616.3	\$ 625.5	\$ 615.2	\$ 455.2
Term Loan <sup>(2)</sup>	1,615.7	1,599.5	1,626.8	1,309.6

<sup>(1)</sup> The carrying amount for the Senior Notes is presented net of the unamortized deferred financing costs of \$3.7 million and \$4.8 million as of March 31, 2021 and March 31, 2020, respectively.

<sup>(2)</sup> The carrying amount for the Term Loan as of March 31, 2021 and March 31, 2020 is presented net of the unamortized original issue discount and deferred financing costs of \$13.1 million and \$19.1 million, respectively.

The estimated fair value of the Company's Senior Notes and Term Loan is based on information from a pricing service or broker quotes and may not represent prices that can be transacted. Therefore, the debt is classified as Level 3 in the fair value hierarchy. The carrying value of cash and cash equivalents approximated their fair values as of March 31, 2021 and 2020 due to the short-term nature of these instruments. The assets acquired and liabilities assumed during fiscal year 2021 were recorded at their respective fair values as of the acquisition date.

**16. SUPPLEMENTAL CASH FLOW INFORMATION**

Details of "Changes in operating assets and liabilities, net of acquisitions" were:

	Fiscal Year Ended March 31,		
	2021	2020	2019
(in millions)			
Accounts receivable, net <sup>(1)</sup>	\$ 33.6	\$ 12.4	\$ (23.8)
Inventories	28.2	17.8	10.1
Prepaid expenses and other current assets	10.7	12.2	(6.3)
Author advances, net	(0.7)	7.3	5.4
Accounts payable and accrued expenses	12.2	(23.3)	22.6
Accrued interest payable	14.3	(2.4)	(1.7)
Operating lease liabilities	(14.5)	(13.7)	—
Deferred revenue	31.8	22.1	19.5
Current taxes payable	(0.3)	(3.0)	2.2
Other, net	1.0	(5.7)	2.8
Net cash provided by operating assets and liabilities, net of acquisitions	<u>\$ 116.3</u>	<u>\$ 23.7</u>	<u>\$ 30.8</u>

<sup>(1)</sup> Accounts receivable, net includes \$5.8 million of non-cash consideration related to the acquisition, see Note 2, "Acquisition," for additional details.

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements**

Cash paid for interest and income taxes was:

	Fiscal Year Ended March 31,		
	2021	2020	2019
(in millions)			
Net cash interest paid	\$ 132.8	\$ 164.3	\$ 165.4
Income taxes paid, net of refunds	8.1	14.7	11.0

***Non-cash Investing Activities***

Additions to pre-publication costs and property, equipment and capitalized internal-use software included in accounts payable and accrued expenses were as follows:

	Fiscal Year Ended March 31,		
	2021	2020	2019
(in millions)			
Additions to pre-publication costs	\$ 9.7	\$ 7.4	\$ 8.7
Additions to property, equipment and capitalized internal-use software	0.9	1.2	8.5

**17. COMMITMENTS AND CONTINGENCIES**

***Commitments***

See Note 18, “Leases,” for additional information.

***Claims, Disputes and Legal and Regulatory Actions***

Along with many of our competitors in the publishing industry, we face putative class action litigation relating to our industry’s shift to digital product offerings.

A putative class action was filed against the Company in the United States District Court for the Southern District of New York. The Complaint alleges that the royalty allocation methodologies the Company applies to certain digital products are “unfair” and “inaccurate” and a breach of the authors’ publishing agreements. Certain of our competitors face similar litigation. On September 29, 2020, the Court granted in part and denied in part the Company’s motion to dismiss, such that only one claim relating to MindTap royalties remained in the case. On April 22, 2021, the Magistrate Judge granted in part Plaintiffs’ motion to amend their Complaint to add a new claim for breach of the implied covenant of good faith and fair dealing as to the Company’s allocation of Cengage Unlimited revenues. The Company objected to the Magistrate Judge’s ruling on May 6, 2021, Plaintiffs opposed on May 20, 2021, and a decision has not yet been rendered. The Company believes that it has good and meritorious defenses and intends to defend against all of the claims vigorously.

The Company is one of several named defendants in multiple putative class action lawsuits brought by independent retailer and student plaintiffs. Plaintiffs allege that Cengage’s (and its competitors’) Inclusive Access model violates antitrust laws by reducing competition from the secondary market and off-campus bookstores. On August 11, 2020, the Judicial Panel on Multidistrict Litigation consolidated all of the pending U.S. cases. The Company, together with other named defendants, moved to dismiss the operative post-consolidation complaints, and the Court dismissed all of the pending claims on June 14, 2021. Plaintiffs have thirty days to file an appeal. A putative class action based on similar allegations was filed in Canada by student plaintiffs and remains pending. The Company believes that the asserted claims in these litigations lack merit, and intends to defend against all of the claims vigorously.

From time to time, the Company may become involved in various claims, disputes and legal or regulatory proceedings that arise in the ordinary course of business and/or may be related to contractual and other obligations of the Company. The Company assesses its potential contingent and other liabilities by analyzing its claims, disputes and legal and regulatory matters using all available information and develops its views on estimated losses, if any, in consultation with its legal and other advisors. Due to the inherent uncertainties of litigation, the Company cannot predict the outcome of the litigation described herein at this time. The Company does not expect that the total cost of resolving current claims, disputes and legal or regulator proceedings will have a material adverse effect on the consolidated financial statements.

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements**

***Other Commitments***

As of March 31, 2021 and 2020, the Company had approximately \$26.2 million and \$45.5 million, respectively, of outstanding purchase commitments that are not recorded in the consolidated financial statements. Such agreements entered into with third parties primarily consisted of outsourcing arrangements related to general accounting, fixed asset and accounts payable functions, as well as purchased or licensed content to be used in the Company's educational products and royalty guarantees derived from minimum usage requirements in agreements with content providers.

As of March 31, 2021, the committed purchase amounts by year were as follows:

*(in millions)*

**Fiscal Years Ending March 31,**

2022	\$	17.6
2023		5.1
2024		2.0
2025		1.5
Total outstanding purchase commitments	\$	<u>26.2</u>

***Warranties***

The Company's standard terms and conditions of sale, warrants ownership of and/or licensing rights to the Company's products and provides certain warranties and indemnifications. The Company is not aware of any instances that would result in any material payments being made as a result of these warranties and indemnifications, and therefore, no reserve has been recorded in the consolidated financial statements.

**18. LEASES**

The Company determines if an arrangement is or contains a lease at inception, which is the date on which the terms of the contract are agreed to, and the agreement creates enforceable rights and obligations. Under Topic 842, a contract is or contains a lease when (i) explicitly or implicitly identified assets have been deployed in the contract and (ii) the customer obtains substantially all of the economic benefits from the use of that underlying asset and directs how and for what purpose the asset is used during the term of the contract. The Company also considers whether its service arrangements include the right to control the use of an asset.

The Company leases office facilities and vehicles from unrelated parties under operating lease agreements that have initial terms ranging from 1 to 99 years. The Company leases office equipment under an operating lease agreement with a term of 9 years. Some leases include one or more options to renew, generally at the Company's sole discretion, with renewal terms that can extend the lease term up to 7 years. In addition, certain leases contain termination options, where the rights to terminate are held by either the Company, the lessor, or both parties. These options to extend or terminate a lease are included in the lease terms when it is reasonably certain that the Company will exercise that option. The Company's leases generally do not contain any material restrictive covenants or residual value guarantees.

Operating lease cost is recognized on a straight-line basis over the lease term.

The components of lease expense are as follows:

	<b>As of March 31,</b>	
	<b>2021</b>	<b>2020</b>
<i>(in millions)</i>		
Operating lease cost	\$ 19.1	\$ 21.8
Short-term lease cost	0.6	1.7
Variable lease cost	10.9	9.8
Sublease income, gross	(0.5)	(0.5)
Total lease cost	<u>\$ 30.1</u>	<u>\$ 32.8</u>

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements**

Supplemental cash flow information related to leases is as follows:

	As of March 31,	
	2021	2020
<i>(in millions)</i>		
Cash paid for amounts included in measurement of lease liabilities:		
Operating cash outflows - payments on operating leases	\$ 21.1	\$ 25.7
Right-of-use assets obtained in exchange for new lease obligations:		
Operating leases	\$ 6.3	\$ 2.8

Supplemental balance sheet information related to leases is as follows:

	As of March 31,	
	2021	2020
<i>(in millions)</i>		
<b>Operating Leases</b>		
Right-of-use assets	\$ 46.6	\$ 59.3
Operating lease liabilities, current	13.0	14.9
Operating lease liabilities, long-term	59.8	65.3
Total operating lease liabilities	<u>\$ 72.8</u>	<u>\$ 80.2</u>

	As of March 31,	
	2021	2020
Weighted-average remaining lease term:		
Operating leases	8.07 years	8.05 years
Weighted-average discount rate		
Operating leases	9.2 %	10.0 %

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements**

The Company leases certain facilities and other operating equipment under non-cancelable operating lease agreements. As of March 31, 2021, future minimum lease payments under these leases were as follows:

<i>(in millions)</i>	<u>As of March 31,</u> <u>2021</u>
<b>Operating Leases</b>	
2022	\$ 18.7
2023	16.1
2024	15.4
2025	11.1
2026	7.3
Thereafter	39.8
Total lease payments	<u>\$ 108.4</u>
Less imputed interest	<u>(35.6)</u>
Total present value of lease liabilities	<u>\$ 72.8</u>

**Significant Assumptions**

Subleases and consignment rental revenues are not material to the Company, and therefore are not disclosed.

Cengage has no leases that are not yet commenced that create significant rights and obligations for the Company, including any involvement with the construction of design of the underlying asset.

**19. SEGMENT INFORMATION**

During the fourth quarter of fiscal year 2021, the Company changed its segment reporting structure to better align with the strategic objectives of the Company, which were driven because of changes to the information reviewed by our chief operating decision maker. Our previous reportable segments, Learning, International and Gale have been recast to conform to the current presentation. Following this change, we are organized into six reportable segments on the basis of products and services provided by each segment, identified as follows:

*U.S. Higher Education*—in the United States, the Company produces a variety of digital and print educational solutions and associated services for the higher education markets.

*International Higher Education*—provides learning materials and digital solutions to post-secondary markets outside the United States.

*Secondary Education*—provides learning platforms and content to prepare 8th-12th grade students to be successful post-high school – whether continuing their education into traditional post-secondary, degree conferring options or pursuing skills or vocational training.

*Workforce Skills*—provides post-secondary and Continuing Education online courses for students to upskill and reskill outside the traditional U.S. Higher Education degree conferring path.

*English Language Teaching*—Operating under the National Geographic Learning brand, provides a full range of English language curriculum and digital solutions to pre-k, primary, secondary and general & academic English markets, globally.

*Research*—the Company offers research platforms around the world which provide access to our original content, collections of primary source materials and aggregated periodicals to learners at libraries, colleges, universities, schools and businesses.

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements**

The segments represent components of the Company for which separate financial information is available that is utilized on a regular basis by the chief operating decision maker in evaluating performance and determining how to allocate resources.

The accounting policies applied by the segments are the same as those applied by the Company. All transactions between reportable segments are eliminated upon consolidation. The Company discloses information about its reportable segments based on the measures used in assessing the performance of those reportable segments. These measures are on a constant currency basis, which removes the impact of changes in foreign currency exchange rates. To calculate constant currency basis, the Company converts current period and prior period results from local currency to United States dollars using standard internal currency exchange rates held constant for each year. As needed, the Company recasts segment information for the prior period based on its internally-derived standard currency exchange rates used for the current period in order to remove the impact of foreign currency exchange fluctuation.

The Company uses Adjusted Revenues and Adjusted EBITDA less Pre-Publication Costs to measure the operating performance of its segments because it believes that these measures provide a meaningful basis for reviewing the results of operations by eliminating the effects of financing decisions, as well as excluding the impact of activities not related to its ongoing operating business. Adjusted Revenues is defined as revenues before the impact of changes in foreign currency exchange rates. Adjusted EBITDA less Pre-Publication Costs is defined as net income (loss) before: benefit from (provision for) income taxes; interest expense, net; other income (expense), net, below operating income (loss); goodwill impairment charges; amortization of identifiable intangible assets; depreciation; operational restructuring and other charges, net; amortization of pre-publication costs; other (income) expense, net, in operating income (loss); right-of-use asset impairment charges; merger and acquisition-related costs; non-core other operating expenses and equity-based compensation expense in the accompanying consolidated statements of operations, less additions to pre-publication costs on an accrual basis. This measure also removes the impact of changes in foreign currency exchange rates on the items noted above. By reducing Adjusted EBITDA by pre-publication costs, the Company includes the impact of re-investment within the segments. The prior periods have been revised to conform to current period presentation.

Selected financial information for the Company's segments is as follows:

	<b>Adjusted Revenues</b>		
	<b>Fiscal Year Ended March 31,</b>		
	<b>2021</b>	<b>2020<sup>(1)</sup></b>	<b>2019<sup>(1)</sup></b>
<i>(in millions)</i>			
U.S. Higher Education	\$ 651.2	\$ 645.2	\$ 708.2
International Higher Education	128.1	164.4	165.7
Higher Education	779.3	809.6	873.9
Secondary Education	131.8	158.0	169.6
Workforce Skills	44.0	32.4	29.6
ELT	67.2	97.6	92.2
Research	184.2	197.0	223.9
Total Segment Adjusted Revenues	1,206.5	1,294.6	1,389.2
Corporate Enabling Functions <sup>(2)</sup>	16.2	15.7	14.2
Impact of foreign currency	15.0	16.7	27.2
Total Consolidated Revenues	<u>\$ 1,237.7</u>	<u>\$ 1,327.0</u>	<u>\$ 1,430.6</u>



**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements**

	<b>Additions to Pre-Publication Costs</b>		
	<b>Fiscal Year Ended March 31,</b>		
	<b>2021</b>	<b>2020<sup>(1)</sup></b>	<b>2019<sup>(1)</sup></b>
<i>(in millions)</i>			
U.S. Higher Education	\$ 26.4	\$ 30.8	\$ 40.1
International Higher Education	6.0	5.9	6.5
Higher Education	32.4	36.7	46.6
Secondary Education	9.2	8.1	12.1
Workforce Skills	1.2	1.1	0.7
ELT	12.3	12.1	13.2
Research	16.4	20.1	21.3
Segment additions to pre-publication costs	71.5	78.1	93.9
Impact of foreign currency	0.8	0.5	1.1
Impact of cash investing activities <sup>(3)</sup>	(2.3)	1.3	0.8
Total additions to pre-publication costs	<u>\$ 70.0</u>	<u>\$ 79.9</u>	<u>\$ 95.8</u>

<sup>(1)</sup> Prior year amounts have been recast to current year standard internal currency exchange rates.

<sup>(2)</sup> Corporate enabling functions include our corporate and shared services, general & administrative costs which are not allocated to our segments, as well as revenue earned from our warehouse for third-party distribution services.

<sup>(3)</sup> Net impact of prior period accrued pre-publication costs paid in current period and current period accrued pre-publication additions.

Segment Adjusted Revenues only includes revenues from external customers and is presented by country of origin. Total asset information by segment is not shown because it is not provided to or reviewed by the chief operating decision maker.

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements**

The following table reconciles Adjusted EBITDA less Pre-Publication Costs to net loss per the consolidated statements of operations:

	Fiscal Year Ended March 31,		
	2021	2020 <sup>(1)</sup>	2019 <sup>(1)</sup>
<i>(in millions)</i>			
U.S. Higher Education	\$ 373.9	\$ 333.5	\$ 335.1
International Higher Education	30.0	56.7	56.6
Higher Education	403.9	390.2	391.7
Secondary Education	46.2	68.6	63.6
Workforce Skills	11.4	5.7	5.6
ELT	(5.3)	19.5	12.3
Research	76.8	73.4	90.0
Total Segment Adjusted EBITDA less Pre-Publication Costs	533.0	557.4	563.2
Corporate enabling functions, net <sup>(2)</sup>	(274.5)	(281.6)	(311.9)
Additions to pre-publication costs <sup>(3)</sup>	71.5	78.1	93.9
Impact of foreign currency	3.9	3.9	7.9
Equity-based compensation expense	(6.9)	(5.4)	(8.4)
Non-core other operating expenses <sup>(4)</sup>	(3.3)	(2.0)	(9.6)
Merger and acquisition-related costs	(2.5)	(44.1)	(6.8)
Right-of-use asset impairment charges	(7.7)	(2.7)	—
Amortization of pre-publication costs	(89.1)	(99.1)	(109.9)
Operational restructuring and other charges	(8.5)	(21.0)	(17.5)
Depreciation	(59.5)	(64.2)	(76.2)
Amortization of identifiable intangible assets	(83.0)	(81.5)	(94.9)
Goodwill impairment charges	(9.7)	(767.8)	—
Other (loss) income, net	(6.1)	3.0	2.3
Interest expense, net	(155.2)	(170.1)	(171.9)
(Provision for) benefit from	(12.5)	(11.8)	31.3
Net loss	<u>\$ (110.1)</u>	<u>\$ (908.9)</u>	<u>\$ (108.5)</u>

<sup>(1)</sup> Prior year amounts have been recast to current year standard internal currency exchange rates.

<sup>(2)</sup> Corporate enabling functions include our corporate and shared services, general & administrative costs which are not allocated to our segments, as well as revenue earned from our warehouse for third-party distribution services.

<sup>(3)</sup> Additions to pre-publication costs are excluded from segment Adjusted EBITDA less Pre-Publication Costs on a constant currency and accrual basis. The impact of foreign currency exchange related to additions to pre-publication costs was \$0.8 million, \$0.5 million, and \$1.1 million for the fiscal years ended March 31, 2021, 2020 and 2019, respectively.

<sup>(4)</sup> Non-core other operating expenses includes primarily bank fees, duplicate rent expense, net, incurred during the build-out phase of the Company's headquarters in Boston, vacated facilities lease exit expense, favorable impact of the write off of deferred rent related to the San Francisco office lease buyout, technology expenses related to COVID-19, severance costs, contract termination costs, consulting costs and management fees.

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements**

***Geographic Information***

Long-lived assets, consisting of property, equipment and capitalized internal-use software and pre-publication costs, were as follows:

	<b>Fiscal Year Ended March 31,</b>	
	<b>2021</b>	<b>2020</b>
<i>(in millions)</i>		
<b>Long-lived assets:</b>		
United States	\$ 275.2	\$ 313.3
Rest of world	25.7	22.4
Total long-lived assets	<u>\$ 300.9</u>	<u>\$ 335.7</u>

For revenue detail by geographic region, see Note 3, “Revenue Recognition.”

**20. VALUATION AND QUALIFYING ACCOUNTS**

<i>(in millions)</i>		<b>Additions</b>					
		<b>Balance at Beginning of Period</b>	<b>Charge to Costs and Expenses</b>	<b>Charge to Other Accounts</b>	<b>Write Offs</b>	<b>Translation</b>	<b>Balance at End of Period</b>
<b>Description</b>							
<b>Fiscal Year Ended March 31, 2021</b>							
Allowance for doubtful accounts	\$	14.6	\$ 7.4	\$ (1.7)	\$ (3.8)	\$ 0.4	\$ 16.9
Sales return reserves		36.3	149.9	3.0	(135.5)	1.2	54.9
Deferred tax valuation allowance		111.0	29.8	—	—	(0.1)	140.7
<b>Fiscal Year Ended March 31, 2020</b>							
Allowance for doubtful accounts	\$	12.6	\$ 7.2	\$ —	\$ (4.1)	\$ (1.1)	\$ 14.6
Sales return reserves		42.8	156.0	0.6	(161.8)	(1.3)	36.3
Deferred tax valuation allowance		4.9	106.7	—	—	(0.6)	111.0
<b>Fiscal Year Ended March 31, 2019</b>							
Allowance for doubtful accounts	\$	12.7	\$ 5.4	\$ —	\$ (4.8)	\$ (0.7)	\$ 12.6
Sales return reserves		70.8	173.4	(1.6)	(198.8)	(1.0)	42.8
Deferred tax valuation allowance		7.0	(1.6)	—	—	(0.5)	4.9

## 21. REVISION OF PRIOR PERIOD FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

As previously disclosed in our Annual Report for the year ended March 31, 2020 and the quarterly report for the third quarter of fiscal year 2021, we recorded a correction of certain prior-period errors to revenue and loss before taxes and determined the correction was immaterial to the fiscal year 2020 financial statements and prior period financial statements. For the year ending March 31, 2021 we have elected to revise all periods presented for the previously disclosed immaterial errors. In addition, as disclosed in Note 1, “New Accounting Standards and Accounting Changes,” Note 3, “Revenue Recognition,” and Note 18, “Leases,” we elected to early adopt certain guidance and have included the impact of such adoption below.

The effect of the corrections and early adoptions to our consolidated balance sheets for the year ended March 31, 2020 were as follows:

	March 31, 2020			
	As Originally Reported	Adjustments	Impact of Adoptions	As Revised
<i>(in millions)</i>				
<b>Assets</b>				
Prepaid expenses and other current assets	\$ 66.6	\$ —	\$ (0.3)	\$ 66.3
Total current assets	706.2	—	(0.3)	705.9
Operating lease right-of-use assets	—	—	59.3	59.3
Other non-current assets	22.7	—	(0.1)	22.6
Total assets	2,770.6	—	58.9	2,829.5
<b>Liabilities and Stockholders’ Deficit</b>				
Accounts payable and accrued expenses	286.1	(0.4)	—	285.7
Deferred revenue	207.7	8.5	—	216.2
Operating lease liabilities	—	—	14.9	14.9
Other current liabilities	17.4	(0.1)	(3.4)	13.9
Total current liabilities	580.8	8.0	11.5	600.3
Deferred tax liabilities	33.7	(1.0)	—	32.7
Operating lease liabilities	—	—	65.3	65.3
Other non-current liabilities	57.5	—	(17.4)	40.1
Total liabilities	2,896.9	7.0	59.4	2,963.3
Accumulated deficit	(1,285.1)	(6.9)	(0.5)	(1,292.5)
Accumulated other comprehensive loss	(70.6)	(0.1)	—	(70.7)
Total stockholders’ deficit	(126.3)	(7.0)	(0.5)	(133.8)
Total liabilities and stockholders’ deficit	2,770.6	—	58.9	2,829.5

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements**

The effect of the corrections to our consolidated statements of operations for the years ended March 31, 2020 and 2019 were as follows:

<i>(in millions)</i>	<b>Fiscal Year Ended March 31, 2020</b>			
	<b>As Originally Reported</b>	<b>Adjustments</b>	<b>Impact of Adoptions</b>	<b>As Revised</b>
Revenues	\$ 1,315.0	\$ 12.0	\$ —	\$ 1,327.0
Cost of revenues	588.0	1.5	—	589.5
Total cost of revenues	692.0	1.5	—	693.5
Selling, general and administrative expenses	389.6	(2.6)	0.1	387.1
Right-of-use asset lease impairment charges	—	—	2.7	2.7
Operational restructuring and other charges, net	23.3	—	(2.3)	21.0
Total costs and expenses	2,057.6	(1.1)	0.5	2,057.0
Operating loss	(742.6)	13.1	(0.5)	(730.0)
Loss before taxes	(909.7)	13.1	(0.5)	(897.1)
Provision for income taxes	(7.5)	(4.3)	—	(11.8)
Net loss	(917.2)	8.8	(0.5)	(908.9)

<i>(in millions)</i>	<b>Fiscal Year Ended March 31, 2019</b>		
	<b>As Originally Reported</b>	<b>Adjustments</b>	<b>As Revised</b>
Revenues	\$ 1,445.5	\$ (14.9)	\$ 1,430.6
Selling, general and administrative expenses	452.5	0.4	452.9
Total costs and expenses	1,400.4	0.4	1,400.8
Operating income	45.1	(15.3)	29.8
Loss before taxes	(124.5)	(15.3)	(139.8)
Benefit from income taxes	27.5	3.8	31.3
Net loss	(97.0)	(11.5)	(108.5)

The consolidated statements of other comprehensive loss and stockholders' (deficit) equity for the years ended March 31, 2020 and 2019 have been revised to include the changes to "net loss" summarized above.

**CENGAGE LEARNING HOLDINGS II, INC.**  
**Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements**

The impact on our consolidated statements of cash flows for the years ended March 31, 2020 and 2019 were as follows:

	<b>Fiscal Year Ended March 31, 2020</b>			
	<b>As Originally Reported</b>	<b>Adjustments</b>	<b>Impact of Adoptions</b>	<b>As Revised</b>
<i>(in millions)</i>				
Net loss	\$ (917.2)	\$ 8.8	\$ (0.5)	\$ (908.9)
Amortization of operating lease assets	—	—	13.8	13.8
Right-of-use asset lease impairment charges	—	—	2.7	2.7
Operational restructuring and other charges	23.3	—	(2.3)	21.0
Cash payments for operational restructuring charges	(32.6)	—	6.3	(26.3)
Deferred income taxes	(6.4)	4.3	—	(2.1)
Changes in operating assets and liabilities, net of acquisitions	55.3	(13.1)	(18.5)	23.7
Other, net	(0.9)	—	(1.5)	(2.4)

	<b>Fiscal Year Ended March 31, 2019</b>		
	<b>As Originally Reported</b>	<b>Adjustments</b>	<b>As Revised</b>
<i>(in millions)</i>			
Net loss	\$ (97.0)	(11.5)	\$ (108.5)
Deferred income taxes	(39.8)	(3.8)	(43.6)
Changes in operating assets and liabilities, net of acquisitions	15.5	15.3	30.8

## 22. SUBSEQUENT EVENTS

There were no material subsequent events identified through June 18, 2021, the date these financial statements were available to be issued.